

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 830SC (handset).

- Read **First Step Guide** and this guide thoroughly before using handset to ensure proper usage.
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.
- Handset is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

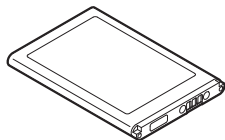
- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22).

Download latest version via SoftBank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/830sc/>).

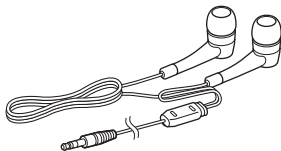
Accessories

Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. Some of these accessories are also sold separately. For details on accessories or optional items, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22).

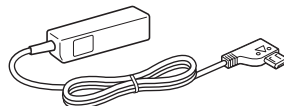
Battery [SCBAR1]



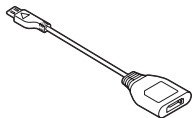
Stereo Earphone*



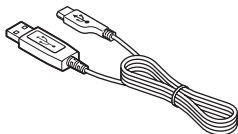
Earphone Conversion Cable with Microphone*



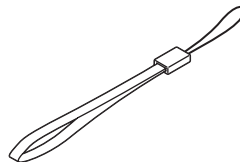
Conversion Cable [SCDAU2]



Data Cable [SCDAU1]



Hand Strap*



microSD™ Memory Card (1GB)*

* Complimentary Sample (not available for purchase)

- Use only specified Charger (Optional) for charging.
- Handset takes microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card.
- microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card" in this guide.
- Download Samsung PC Studio from SAMSUNG Website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/830download.html>).

Chapter Contents At a Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Internet Services	5
Camera	6
Media Player	7
Handy Extras	8
Handset Security	9
Data Folder & Memory	10
Connectivity & File Backup	11
Handset Customization	12
Appendix	13

About This Guide

In this guide, SoftBank 830SC is referred to as "handset". Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screenshots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screenshots and 830SC Illustrations

Screenshots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual Display images. Product illustrations may differ from actual product appearance.

In some screenshots, Wallpaper is set to None for Display image clarity.

Confirmations & Warning Messages

Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all handset confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

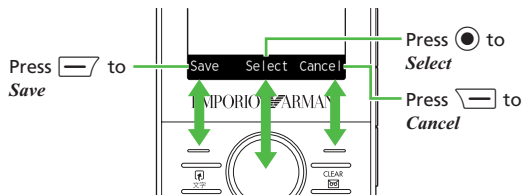
Symbols

In this guide, graphics represent handset keys; see "Parts & Functions" (P.1-3).

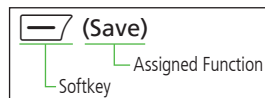
Softkeys and Multi selector operations are indicated as follows:

Softkeys

Operation options such as "Select" and "Save" appear at the bottom of Display (Softkey area). Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



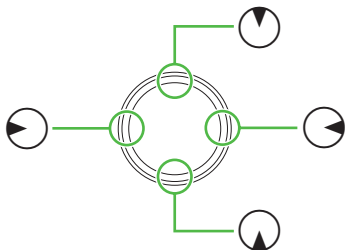
Softkey Operations



Multi Selector Operations

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below:

Basic Multi Selector Operations



▲: Press ○ or ▲

◀: Press ○ or ▶

⊗: Press ▼, ▲, ▶ or ○

Menu Operations

Main Menu operation explanations are abbreviated with arrows.

Main Menu

1 ● → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*
Highlight an item and ● (Select)

For details, see "Using Main Menu" (P.2-3).

Menu

1 ☰ → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth*
Press ☰ (Menu) to open Menu
Highlight an item and ● (Select)

Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Chapter Contents At a Glance	i
About This Guide	ii
Contents	iv
Safety Precautions	vi
General Notes	xv
SAR Certification	xix
FCC RF Exposure Information	xx
European RF Exposure Information	xxi

1 Getting Started

Getting Started	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-3
USIM Card	1-5
Battery & Charger	1-7
Power On/Off	1-11
Account Details	1-12
Key Lock	1-13
Standby Window	1-13
Minding Mobile Manners	1-14
Security Codes	1-18
Advanced Settings	1-19

2 Basic Operations

Functions Selection	2-2
Accessing Functions	2-3
Common Operations	2-4
Received Call Settings	2-5
Standby Display Options	2-6
Text Entry	2-7
User's Dictionary	2-12
Phonebook	2-13
Advanced Settings	2-19

3 Calling

Call Types & Optional Services	3-2
Voice Call	3-4
Speed Dial	3-6
Emergency Numbers	3-7
Answering Machine	3-7
Black List	3-8
Call Log Records	3-10
Checking Call Time/Cost	3-11
International Call	3-11
Global Roaming Service	3-12
Optional Services	3-14
Advanced Settings	3-20

4 Messaging

Messaging Services	4-2
Customizing Mail Address	4-4
Creating/Sending Messages	4-4
Incoming Messages	4-8
Using Messages	4-13
Managing Mail Folders	4-16
Advanced Settings	4-17

5 Internet Services

Internet	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Page Operations	5-5
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
Advanced Settings	5-8

6 Camera

Mobile Camera	6-2
Camera	6-3
Video Camera	6-9
Printing Still Images	6-12
Advanced Settings	6-12

7 Media Player

Media Player 7-2
 Downloading Music/Movies. 7-3
 Playing Music. 7-3
 Playing Movies. 7-5
 Using Playlist 7-8
 Advanced Settings 7-8

8 Handy Extras

Useful Handset Applications 8-2
 Calendar 8-3
 Alarms 8-4
 Calculator. 8-5
 Converter 8-6
 World Clock 8-7
 Notepad. 8-7
 Tasks 8-7
 Voice Recorder. 8-8
 Stopwatch 8-9
 File Viewer 8-9
 Dictionary. 8-11
 Advanced Settings 8-11

9 Handset Security

Security Functions 9-2
 Changing Phone Password 9-3
 Lock 9-3
 Function Lock. 9-5
 Restoring Default Settings 9-7

10 Data Folder & Memory

Data Folder 10-2
 Viewing Files 10-3
 Managing Files/Folders 10-4
 Memory Card 10-7
 Advanced Settings. 10-10

11 Connectivity & File Backup

Connectivity & File Backup 11-2
 Bluetooth® 11-3
 USB Connection 11-7
 Memory Card Backup. 11-7
 S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) 11-9
 Advanced Settings 11-11

12 Handset Customization

Messaging Settings 12-2
 Internet Settings 12-6
 Media Player Settings 12-8
 Camera Settings. 12-9
 Sounds & Vibrator & External Light
 Settings. 12-10
 Phone Settings. 12-13
 Connectivity Settings 12-21

13 Appendix


Troubleshooting. 13-2
 Software Update 13-5
 Function List. 13-6
 Text Entry Key Assignments. 13-8
 Symbols List. 13-9
 Pictograms 13-10
 Memory List. 13-11
 Specifications. 13-11
 Index 13-13
 Objective Index 13-18
 Advanced Settings Index 13-20
 Warranty & Service 13-21
 Customer Service 13-22

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.







- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 Warning	Risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 Caution	Risk of serious injury ² or damage to property ³ from improper use

- 1 "Serious injury" includes blindness, wounds, low/high heat burns, electric shock, bone fractures, poisoning or other physical harm with aftereffects, or requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.
- 2 "Serious injury" includes wounds, burns, electric shock or other physical harm not requiring hospitalization or ongoing hospital visits.
- 3 "Damage to property" includes damage to home, furniture, livestock, pets, etc.

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions. Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

	Prohibited actions
Prohibited	
	Disassembly prohibited
Do Not Disassemble	
	Exposure to liquids prohibited
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	
	Use with wet hands prohibited
Do Not Use Wet Hands	
	Compulsory actions
Compulsory	
	Unplug Charger from outlet
Disconnect Power Source	

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card



Danger

Use specified battery and Charger (sold separately) only.



Compulsory

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.



Do Not
Disassemble

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite.

This mobile phone is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.

Do not expose handset or related hardware to liquids.



Avoid Liquids
Or Moisture

Do not leave handset or related hardware wet after exposure to water, pet urine, etc., and do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use them in an appropriate place properly.

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).



Prohibited

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.



Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Warning

Do not place handset, battery or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.



Prohibited

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset/Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.



Compulsory

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion.

To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset near gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect charger from connector.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from Charging terminals, External Device or Memory Card Port.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited



Caution

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or during Charge.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

If your child is using handset and related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.

Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Battery

Danger

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory

Warning

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

Caution

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

Handset

Warning

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Accidents may result.

Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

Turn handset power off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:

Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

Because handset radio waves may impair aircraft operations, please power off handset while aboard.

When handset use aboard aircraft is allowed, please follow instructions of airline personnel.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

Caution

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.



Compulsory

Metal and other materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (upper)	PC + GF (20 %)
Housing (rear)	PC
Keypad/Music Key	PC SHEET + URETHANE (RUBBER)
External Light	PC
Volume Key/Camera Key	PC + URETHANE
Charger/External Device Port Cover	PC + URETHANE
Battery Cover/Armani Logo	PC

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.



Prohibited

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.

Do not swing handset by strap.



Prohibited

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.



Compulsory

Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.



Prohibited

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Moderate handset volume when using Earphone Microphone.



Compulsory

Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Charger (Sold Separately)

Warning

Do not cover/wrap Charger while charging.

Charger may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.

AC Charger (only for household wall sockets): AC 100V-240V Input



Prohibited

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect
Power Source

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect Charger from outlet immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke/fire.



Disconnect
Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with a dry cloth.

Fire may result.



Compulsory

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use
Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited



Caution

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger from outlet before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect
Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger from outlet.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not subject Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Warning

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:



Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that turns handset power on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.



Compulsory

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset/Memory Card. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Usage Limits

- The following functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation:
 - Camera
 - Media Player
- After a long period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; establish a Network connection to restore usability.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damage.
- Use handset between 5°C - 40°C. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.

- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera. The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338
- S! Mail, PC Site Browser, S! Addressbook Back-up, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail and 3D Pictogram are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK", SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- "Yahoo!", the "Yahoo!" and "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries.

ACCESS NetFront®

- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).
- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- "Chaku-Uta®" and "Chaku-Uta Full®" are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- microSD™ and microSDHC™ are trademarks of SD Association.



- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of handset, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.
2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth® functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
3. If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth® emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:
Contact: SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (☎P.13-22) for landline numbers by service area.

Handset transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

SAR Certification

830SC meets the technical standards of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards are established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to human head from affecting human health. These standards assure that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2W/kg^* . This value includes a substantial safety margin designated to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value for 830SC is 0.557 W/kg . This value is obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with the mobile phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in the SAR levels depending on phones, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to employ the minimum power level required for the communication with the base station, the SAR of the phone during a call is usually below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm>

ARIB: <http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html>

- * **The guideline is defined by relevant laws and regulations associated with the Radio Law (No. 2 of Article 14 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).**

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: The SAR value at the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset placed on the body and using earphone-microphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): The value measured when having talked continuously for 6 minutes.

*** Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the ordinary handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For further information, see the following SoftBank website:

<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html>

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver.

It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organisations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.638 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.631 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of belt clips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorisation for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of

<http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on FCC ID A3LSWD830SC.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 1.11 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.841 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*** The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.**

Getting Started



Getting Started	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-3
Handset	1-3
Display Indicators	1-4
USIM Card	1-5
Before Using USIM Card	1-5
Inserting & Removing USIM Card	1-6
Battery & Charger	1-7
Before Using Battery or Charger	1-7
Inserting & Removing Battery	1-8
Charging Battery	1-10
Power On/Off	1-11
Power On	1-11
Power Off	1-12
Account Details	1-12
Confirming Handset Number	1-12
Editing Account Details	1-12
Key Lock	1-13
Standby Window	1-13
Minding Mobile Manners	1-14
Offline Mode	1-14
Manner Mode	1-14
Changing Mode Settings	1-15
Default Mode Settings	1-15
Security Codes	1-18
Phone Password	1-18
Center Access Code	1-18
Network Password	1-18
PIN	1-19
USIM Lock Password	1-19

Advanced Settings

Account Details	1-19
-----------------------	------

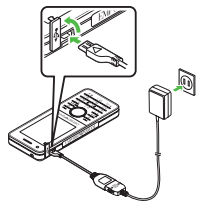
Getting Started

Learn basic information before using handset.

Parts & Functions

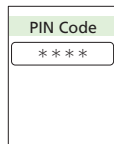
Use this guide to identify handset keys, functions, and Display indicators, etc.

Charging



Charge battery via USB Charging or AC Charger (➔P.1-10).

PIN



Use these codes for added handset security.

- Phone Password
- Center Access Code
- Network Password
- PIN Code
- USIM Verification Password

PIN can be changed on handset (➔P.1-18).

Minding Mobile Manners

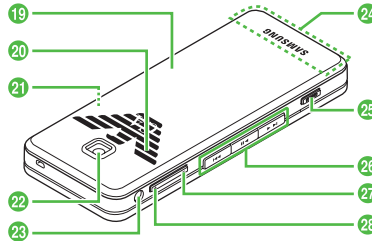
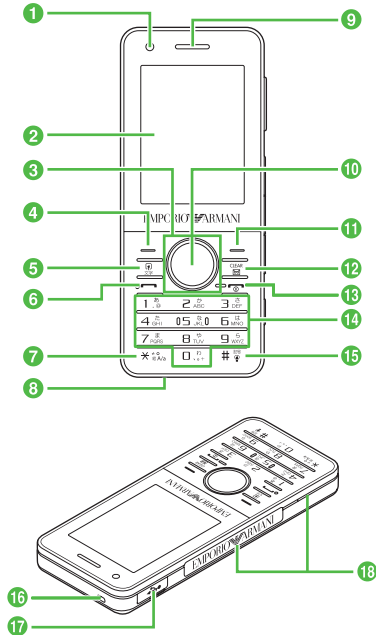


Please take care not to disturb others when using handset in public. Select from two manner-related modes and use appropriately (➔P.1-14).

Power off handset if required (➔P.1-11).

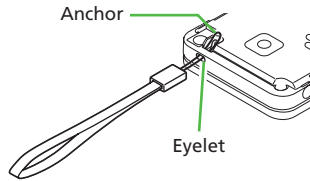
Parts & Functions

Handset







Attaching Hand Strap





Remove Battery Cover. Feed Anchor through Eyelet, hooking Anchor on tab, then replace Battery Cover.



● Do not swing handset by strap to avoid injury or handset malfunction/breakage.

- 1 Optical Sensor
Measure ambient brightness.
- 2 Display
- 3 Multi Selector
Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window, etc.
- 4 Mail Key/Left Softkey
Open Messaging menu. Also, execute Left Softkey command or function.
- 5 Switch/Character Key
Open Switch Bar (P.2-3). Toggle text entry modes in text entry window.
- 6 Start Key
Make and receive Voice Calls. In Standby, press to open Call Log (Dialed).
- 7 * Key
Enter Pictograms, etc. Press for 1+ seconds to open Manner Mode Settings.
- 8 Microphone
- 9 Earpiece
- 10 Main Menu Key/Center Key
Open main menu. Execute Center Softkey command or function.
- 11 Yahoo! Keitai Key/Right Softkey
Open Yahoo! Keitai main menu. Execute Right Softkey command or function.

- 12**  Clear/Back Key
Delete entered text or return to the previous operation step.
- 13**  Power/End Key
Turn power on/off or end operations.
- 14**  Keypad
Enter numbers or characters. Also, select menu items.
- 15**  #/Manner Key
Enter symbols, etc. Also, activate or cancel Manner mode (press for 1+ seconds).
- 16** Strap Eyelet
For attaching Hand Strap, see "Attaching Hand Strap" (P.1-3).
- 17** Charger/External Device Port
Connect Charger, PC, earphone microphone etc.
- 18** External Light
Flashes for Missed Call or Incoming Call/ Mail.
- 19** Battery Cover
Remove to access Battery, or USIM/ Memory Card.
- 20** Speaker
- 21** Memory Card Port (Under Battery Cover)

- 22** Camera
Capture images.
- 23** Stereo Earphone Port
Connect Stereo Earphone (Optional).
- 24** Internal Antenna
- 25**  Camera Key
Press this for 2+ seconds to activate Camera. Release shutter to capture images.
- 26**  Music Key
Play music or movie with Media Player.
- 27**  Volume Key
Lower ringer or Media Player volume.
- 28**  Volume Key
Raise ringer or Media Player volume.

● Internal Antenna & Optical Sensor

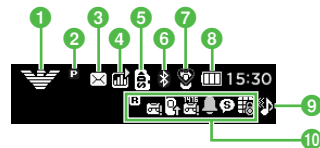
Handset transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. There is no external antenna.
















Voice quality may vary by where/how handset is used.












































Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna and Optical Sensor.


- Keep Optical Sensor clear of obstructions; may cause malfunction.
- If using Protective Film, keep Optical Sensor area free of obstructions; may cause malfunction.

Display Indicators



- 1**  Signal Strength (strong)
 Signal Strength (medium)
 Signal Strength (weak)
 Signal Strength (extremely weak)
 Out-of-Range (outside service area or signal range/coverage)
OUT Out-of-Range (**Language** set to other than **日本語**)
 Offline Mode
- 2**  3G Network Connected
 3G Network Connected (Ready)
 3G Network Connected (In Use)
 GSM Network Connected
 GSM Network Connected (Ready)
 GSM Network Connected (In Use)
 SSL Connected
 Packet Communication Unavailable
 Voice Call in Progress (flashes when dialing or receiving calls)

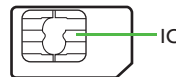
- 3  New Message
-  Delivery Report Active
-  Memory Full (S! Mail/SMS)
-  Downloading Content Key
- 4  Music Playing
-  Music Paused
- 5  Memory Card Inserted
-  Read from Memory Card
-  Software Update Required
-  PC Site Browser Connected
- 6  Bluetooth® Active
-  Bluetooth® Transmission
-  Bluetooth® Internet Connection
-  Bluetooth® Headset Connected
-  USB Connected
-  (Yellow) USB Connection
-  Data Synchronized
- 7  Manner Mode
-  Drive Mode
-  Meeting Mode
-  Outdoor Mode
- 8  Battery Strong
-  Battery Moderate
-  Battery Low
-  Battery Weak (Charge Now)
-  (Flashing) Battery Empty
- 9  Ringer & Vibration active for calls
-  Ringer active for calls
-  Vibration active for calls
-  Ringer & Vibration disabled for calls
- 10  Roaming Active
-  Answering Machine Active
-  Unheard Answering Machine Message
-  Voicemail/Call Forwarding (*No reply*) Active
-  Unheard Voicemail
-  Alarm Set
-  Schedule
-  Schedule with Alarm Set
-  Tasks
-  Tasks with Alarm Set
-  Secret Mode Active
-  All Keys Locked
-  Password Locked

- When  (Red) appears, only Packet Communications and Outgoing S! Mail are available. Calls, Incoming S! Mail notification, and SMS Service are all disabled.

USIM Card

Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use handset; power off handset to insert/remove USIM Card.



USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card.

Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for damage resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.

- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Note

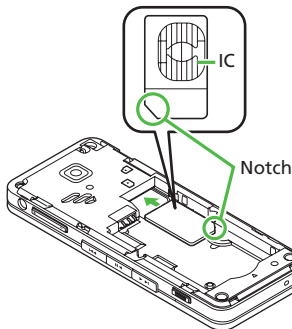
- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, a charge will be applied for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or handset with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22) immediately to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement, or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta[®], Chaku-Uta Full[®] or video files on handset/Memory Card.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.

Inserting & Removing USIM Card

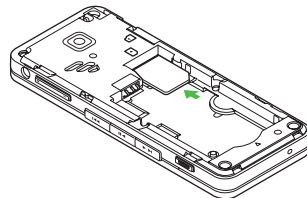
Always turn power off before opening handset to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

Inserting

- 1 Remove battery (☎P.1-9)
- 2 With IC chip facing down, insert USIM Card into card slot as shown in the illustration

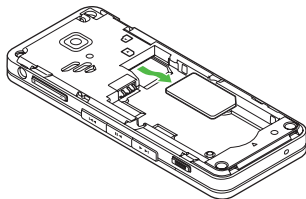


- 3 Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks



Removing

- 1 Remove battery (➔P.1-9)
- 2 Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out



Note

- Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or handset.
- Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.
- To prevent damaging USIM Card, avoid touching the IC chip when inserting or removing it. Do not touch USIM Card with battery contacts.

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of handset or after long periods of disuse.

Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge. Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Handset uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in anytime without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
 - In ambient temperatures beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - In high levels of humidity, vibration or dust (Malfunction may result)
 - Near a radio receiver (Feedback may result)

- Handset or Charger may become warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➔P.13-22).
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note

- Use specified Charger only.
- Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
- When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet.

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
 - Storing/using handset beyond 5°C - 40°C
 - Using handset in poor signal conditions
 - Debris on handset, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
 - Camera use
 - Media Player use
 - Heavy use (e.g., for using messaging)
 - Bluetooth® transmissions

- Settings

- Increasing brightness/time of Backlight in *Light of Display settings*
- Using Media Player with Backlight set to *Always On*

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal. Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

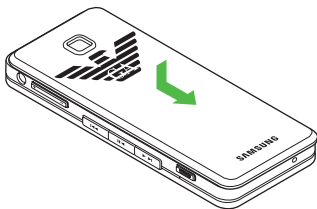
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and handset beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise handset will automatically turn off.

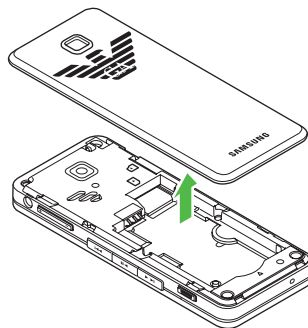
Inserting & Removing Battery

Inserting

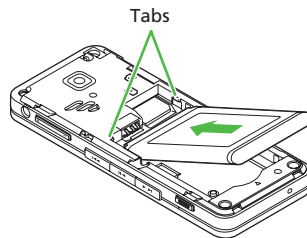
- 1 Press and slide Battery Cover as shown



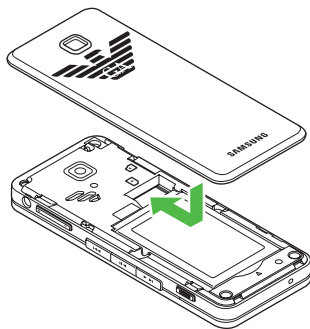
- 2 Remove Battery Cover



- 3 Fit battery slots into handset tabs as shown



4 Replace Battery Cover



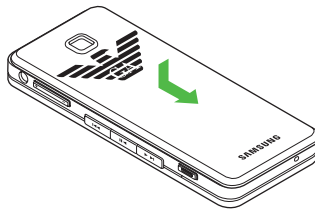
Note

- Remove Battery Cover with care; stress on tabs may damage them.
- Gently insert battery to avoid damaging handset tabs.
- Without cover, battery may fall out. Attach Battery Cover before use.
- Strong impacts may damage Battery Cover.

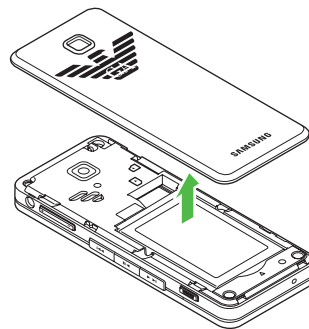
Removing

Always turn handset off before removing battery.
Never remove battery while Charger is connected.

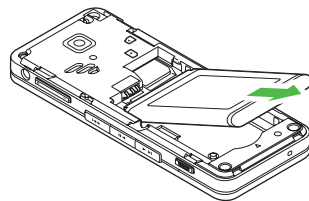
1 Press and slide Battery Cover as shown




2 Remove Battery Cover



3 Lift battery up and remove as shown

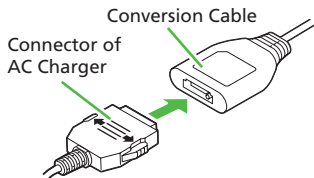


Charging Battery

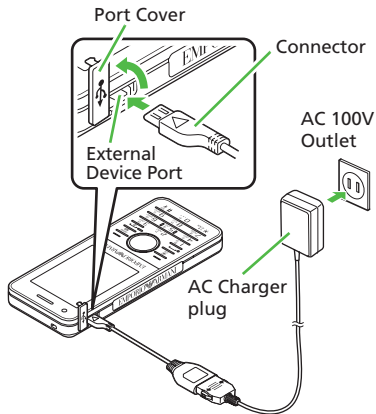
- If handset is on while Charger is connected, battery indicator shows charge level, charging as follows:  flashes when battery is fully charged. If handset is off, **Charging...** appears while charging and when battery is charged, **Battery full** appears.
- An empty battery requires approximately 160 minutes to charge with handset power off. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

AC Charger

1 Connect AC Charger connector to Conversion Cable

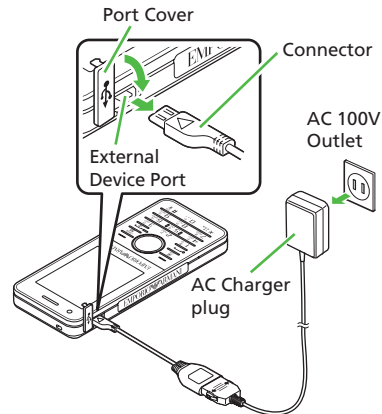


2 Open Port Cover and insert Conversion Cable connector into External Device Port



3 Plug AC Charger into an AC 100V outlet

4 When charging is complete, remove Conversion Cable connector from handset, close Port Cover and disconnect from AC 100V outlet



USB Charging

Connect handset to PC via Data Cable to charge battery.

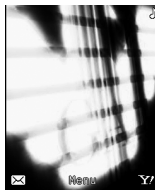
- 1 Open Port Cover and insert Data Cable connector into External Device Port
- 2 Insert USB Plug into a PC USB port
- 3 When battery is charged, remove the connector, close Port Cover, and remove USB Plug

- USB charging takes longer; charging time varies by PC. A weak battery may not charge via USB.






Power On/Off

Power On

- 1 Press  until Display illuminates



Standby Window


- To confirm handset phone number, press  → . Your phone number appears in Account Details. Edit contents (☞P.1-12).
- When handset is left open without operations, Display automatically shuts down to conserve battery. Backlight time can be adjusted (☞P.12-12).
- When ,  or  is pressed for the first time or a function requiring a network connection is activated, **Retrieve NW info** appears. Choose **Yes**, then follow onscreen instructions to retrieve Network information.
 - **Retrieve NW info** confirmation appears after replacing USIM Card or executing **All reset**.
 - Retrieving Network information sets date and time. Network Services (Messaging and Yahoo! Keitai) are available.
 - Retrieve Network information manually (☞P.12-22).
 - This guide describes operations with date and time set unless noted otherwise.

Power Off

1 Press until Display goes dark

- SoftBank logo appears and handset powers off.

Note

- For proper shut down, press  until Display goes dark.

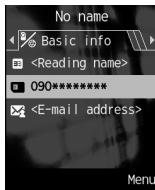
Account Details



Confirm handset (USIM Card) phone number; save name, e-mail address, etc. in Account Details.

Confirming Handset Number

Confirm your own number, etc. in Account Details.

1 →



- Only handset phone number appears by default.
- In Account Details, highlight target category and press  (Edit) to edit information items.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press  → *Phonebook* → *Account Detail* to access items.

Editing Account Details

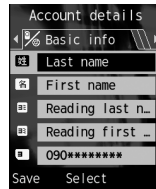
Example: save Name, Phone Number, E-mail Address

- See "Adding Information to Phonebook Entry" (P.2-20) to save other information.

1 →

2 → (Edit)

3 Select Last name field → Enter last name



4 Select First name field → Enter first name

5 Select Reading last name field → Edit reading of last name as required

6 Select Reading first name field
→ Edit reading of first name
as required

7 Select Phone number field →
Enter phone number → Select
icon

8 Select E-mail address field →
Enter mail address → Select
icon

9  (Save)

- See "Text Entry" (P.2-7) to enter text.
- Handset phone number appears by default. This phone number cannot be changed.


Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (P.1-19)



- Sending Account Details as vFile
- Resetting Account Details
- Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder
- Copying Item in Account Details
- Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

Key Lock

Set to prevent accidental operation when carrying handset in a bag or pocket, etc. Set Key Lock in Standby.

1  (1+ seconds)

- Key Lock is activated.

- When Key Lock is set,  appears on top of Display. When any key is pressed, a guidance to cancel Key Lock appears.
- To cancel Key Lock, press  for 1+ seconds while guidance appears on Display.
- Set *Auto keypad lock* (P.9-4) to **On** to set Key Lock automatically when Display backlight turns off.

Standby Window

Access handset applications via Shortcut Bar or Switch Bar (P.2-3). Set images saved in Data Folder as Wallpaper.

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset.

- Turn your handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep your handset off aboard airplanes*, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
 - * If handset use is permitted aboard airplane, follow the airline company's instructions for proper use.
- Refrain from using your handset in quiet places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Handset offers two manner-related modes.

• Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all handset transmissions. Other functions may be used.

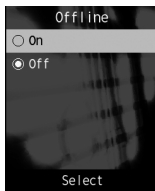
• Manner Mode


Mute handset sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner mode. In addition, handset features Normal, Drive, Meeting and Outdoor modes for ringtone or operation sound.

- Activating Offline mode or Manner mode mutes ringer. Alternatively, set Ringtone volume or Vibration (P. 12-10).

Offline Mode


- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Offline* → *On or Off*





- If handset powers off in Offline mode, a confirmation appears the next time handset powers on. Press  (No) for Normal mode.

Manner Mode


Cancel settings for Manner Mode from current setting mode with easy operations.

- 1  (1+ seconds)

- When Manner mode is active,  appears.
- Even when Manner mode is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.
- Press  for 1+ seconds to cancel Manner mode. Canceling Manner mode, returns handset to mode set before it was activated.






Changing Mode Settings

Handset features five modes, including Manner Mode.

1  (1+ seconds)

2 *Normal, Manner, Drive, Meeting or Outdoor*

Select mode by usage; edit Normal Mode or Manner Mode settings as required (➔P.1-15).

Mode	Description
 Normal Mode*	All Sounds & Alerts settings apply
 Manner Mode	Mutes handset system sounds
 Drive Mode	Mutes ringers; plays Driving Message and activates Answering Machine for calls
 Meeting Mode	Mutes Ringtones & System sound
 Outdoor Mode	Maximizes tone volume

* Normal mode indicator does not appear in Standby.

Default Mode Settings

Default volume and ringtone settings vary by mode. Change incoming transmission response by mode. Available items vary by mode. See defaults below (➔P.12-20).

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
Volume					
Voice call	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Message	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Missed call notification	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Delivery report	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Phone sounds	Level 3	N/A	N/A	Off	Level 5
Ringtone					
Voice call	Armani_Night Effect.mp4	N/A	N/A	Armani_Night Effect.mp4	Armani_Night Effect.mp4
Message	Armani_Alert_Charm.mp4 5 Seconds	N/A	N/A	Armani_Alert_Charm.mp4 5 Seconds	Armani_Alert_Charm.mp4 5 Seconds
Missed call notification	Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4 5 Seconds	N/A	N/A	Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4 5 Seconds	Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4 5 Seconds
Delivery report	Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4 5 Seconds	N/A	N/A	Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4 5 Seconds	Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4 5 Seconds
Vibration					
Voice call	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Message	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Missed call notification	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Delivery report	Off	Pattern 1	N/A	Off	Off
Phone sounds ¹					
Keypad tones	Off	N/A	N/A	Off	Off
System sounds	Several tones on	Alerts on call	N/A	Alerts on call	Several tones on

Item \ Mode	Normal	Manner	Drive	Meeting	Outdoor
External light					
Incoming					
Voice call	On	On	On	On	On
Message	On	On	On	On	On
Missed call notification	On	On	On	On	On
Alarm	On	On	On	On	On
Delivery report	On	On	On	On	On
Notification					
Missed call	On	On	On	On	On
Message	On	On	On	On	On
Answering Machine	On	On	On	On	On
Missed call notification	On	On	On	On	On
Missed alarm ²	On	On	On	On	On
Delivery report	On	On	On	On	On
Answering Machine	Off	On	N/A ³	Off	Off

1 In Manner mode, **System sounds** can be set; **Phone sounds** is not available.

2 The setting is used for the light to notify you of missed schedules (☞P.8-3) or tasks (☞P.8-7) (Note that the setting is not used for a normal alarm (☞P.8-4) or Schedule/Tasks alarm).

3 Answering machine activates automatically in Drive mode.

Advanced

Settings

- Set Keypad tones (☞ P.12-11)
- Set system sounds (☞ P.12-11)
- Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions etc. (☞ P.12-11)
- Set External Light color for incoming transmissions, etc. (☞ P.12-11)
- Illuminate External Light for missed call, etc. (☞ P.12-11)
- Set External Light color for missed calls (☞ P.12-11)
- Activate or cancel Offline mode (☞ P.12-19)
- Switching Manner Mode (☞ P.12-20)

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

Phone Password

The 4-digit number (9999 by default) is required to operate/change some handset functions.

- Entered Phone Password digits are represented with *.
- If incorrect, an error message appears. Input Phone Password again.
- Phone Password can be changed on handset (☞ P.9-3).

Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at subscription; required to change service subscriptions or optional services to operate handset from landlines.

Network Password

4-digit number specified at subscription, required to restrict handset services. Entering incorrect Network Password 3 consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞ P.13-22).

- Network Password can be changed on handset (☞ P.3-19).

Note

- Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password. If you lose a code, contact Customer Service (☞ P.13-22).
- Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damage caused by misuse of these codes by others.

PIN

USIM Card features 2 security codes: PIN and PIN2.

PIN Code

Use PIN (4- to 8-digit) to prevent unauthorized use of handset by others.

- Modify PIN (☎P.9-3).
- When PIN lock is activated, PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (☎P.9-4).

PIN2 Code

PIN2 (4- to 8-digit) is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

- Modify PIN2 (☎P.9-3).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits handset function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock.

For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22).

Note

- Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates handset. Take a note of PUK and PUK2.
- A locked USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22).

USIM Lock Password

USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. Change USIM Password each time **USIM lock** is set to **On**.

Advanced Settings

Account Details

Editing Account Details

☑ → [0] → [⊗] → [☐] (Edit) → (☎P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry ②)

Sending Account Details as vFile

☑ → [0] → [☐] → *Send account details*

To send via message

Via message → (☎P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (☎P.11-5 Sending One by One ②)

Resetting Account Details

☑ → [0] → [☐] → [☐] → *Reset account details*
→ *Yes*

- All Account details other than phone number saved in USIM Card are reset.

Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder

☑ → [0] → [☐] → [☐] → *Save to Data Folder*
→ *Phone* or *Memory card* → *Yes*

- The save location can be set to **Memory card** if inserted.

Copying Item in Account Details

 →  → Highlight an item to copy →

 → *Copy item*

- Copied item can be pasted in the text entry window.

Printing with Bluetooth®-Compatible Printer

 →  →  → *Print via bluetooth*

→ (➔P.6-12 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

Sending Message to Mail Address in Account Details

 →  → Highlight a mail address →

 (Send) → (➔P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

Basic Operations



Functions Selection	2-2
Accessing Functions	2-3
Using Switch Bar	2-3
Using Main Menu	2-3
Using Shortcuts in Standby	2-4
Common Operations	2-4
Menu Options	2-4
Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items	2-4
Received Call Settings	2-5
Ringtone Volume	2-5
Ringtone	2-5
Vibration	2-6
Standby Display Options	2-6
Wallpaper	2-6
Text Entry	2-7
Text Entry Window	2-8
Text Entry Flow	2-8
Changing Entry Mode	2-8
Kana/Kanji	2-9
Kana/Alphabet/Number	2-9
Symbol	2-10
Pictograms/Emoticons	2-10
Line Break	2-10
Hangul	2-11
E-mail Address/URL Quick Entry	2-11
Deleting/Editing	2-12
User's Dictionary	2-12
Editing User's Dictionary	2-12
Saving to User's Dictionary	2-12

Phonebook	2-13
Phonebook Window	2-15
Creating New Entries	2-15
Searching Phonebook	2-17
Calling from Phonebook	2-17
Deleting Phonebook Entries	2-18
Advanced Settings	
Main Menu	2-19
Standby Image	2-19
Text Entry	2-19
User's Dictionary	2-20
Phonebook	2-20

Functions Selection

Handset offers many convenient functions. Learn how to access them here.

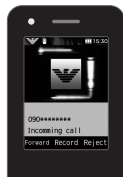
2

Accessing Functions



Use Switch Bar, etc. to select functions quickly (➡P.2-3).

Received Call Settings



Set handset response (e.g., Ringtone, Vibration) to incoming calls (➡P.2-5).

Text Entry



Enter English, Japanese, or Hangul text (➡P.2-7).

Phonebook



Save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. here (➡P.2-13).

Accessing Functions

Use these methods to access handset applications:

- Switch Bar
- Main Menu
- Shortcut




Using Switch Bar

Select *Call*, *Messaging*, *Yahoo! Keitai* or *Media Player*. Use multiple functions at the same time (e.g. create messages while listening to music or use the Internet during a call).

1 In Standby or active function,



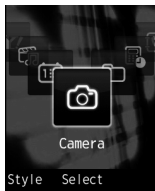
2 Use to highlight target function → (Select)

- To exit an active function, open the window of the function and press .
- To exit all active functions, highlight  at the Switch Bar and press  (Yes).

- When you exit all active functions, a confirmation may appear for some functions. When the confirmation appears, choose *Yes* or *No*.
- When you exit all active functions while creating a message, functions are exited and the message creation window appears.
- Switch Bar does not appear in text entry window.

Using Main Menu

1 In Standby,

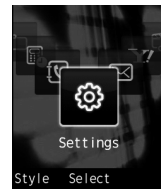


Main Menu

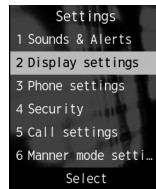
2 Highlight target item → (Select)

3 Repeat Step 2 to select target function

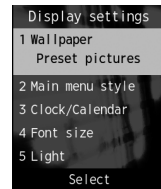
Example: Selecting *Wallpaper*
Settings → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*



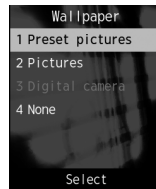
Highlight *Settings*
 →  (Select)






Highlight *Display settings*
 →  (Select)



Highlight *Wallpaper* →
 (Select)























Wallpaper setting window appears

- Press  to return to the previous operation step.
- Press  to exit menu. Handset returns to Standby. If multiple functions are active, active window appears.
- Press  to cancel menu. Handset returns to Standby or previous window. In some menus, a confirmation appears.
- Speed Dial numbers appear in item or list window. Press corresponding Keypad key to select an item.

Using Shortcuts in Standby

Press Shortcut Key in Standby to activate corresponding function.

Key	Menu/Function
	Messaging menu
 (1+ seconds)	Create S! Mail
	Yahoo! Keitai main menu
 (1+ seconds)	Yahoo! Keitai menu
	Switch Bar
 (1+ seconds)	Activate/Cancel Key Lock
	Calendar
	Search Phonebook
 (1+ seconds)	Add to Phonebook
	Call log (Received)
 	Call log (Dialed)


Key	Menu/Function
	Open Recording list
 (1+ seconds)	Activate/Cancel Answering Machine
 (1+ seconds)	Manner mode setting window
 (1+ seconds)	Toggle Manner mode On/Off
	Adjust Earpiece volume
 (2+ seconds)	Activate Camera
	Music list window
 (1+ seconds)	Media Player music playback window


Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.2-19

Common Operations


Menu Options

When **Menu** appears on the lower-right screen, press  to open Menu.


To execute a menu item, highlight it and press  (Select).



Selecting/Canceling Multiple Items

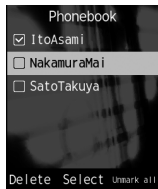
Select "**Multiple**" etc. to select multiple items for deleting or moving operation.

Highlight items on displayed screen and press  (Select) to check; of item changes to .

Repeat the operation to select multiple items.

Highlight checked items and press  (Select) to cancel the selection.

To select or cancel all items, press  (Mark all) or  (Unmark all).



In this guide, "to check (item)" means to select multiple items.

- Available operations vary by function.
- If you select all items to delete, Phone Password entry is required.

Received Call Settings

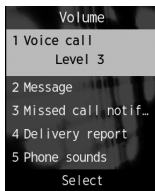
Adjust Volume, Ringtone and Vibration settings. Use ringtone/vibration pattern to identify caller.

Ringtone Volume

Adjust Ringtone volume in 6 levels: 0 (mute) - 5.

1 → *Settings* → *Sounds & Alerts* → *Volume*

2 Select types of incoming call/
message/transmission



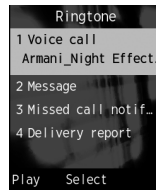
3 Use to adjust volume

Ringtone

Set Ringtones, Ring songs, Movies downloaded from the Internet, apart from presets.

1 → *Settings* → *Sounds & Alerts* → *Ringtone*

2 Select types of incoming call/
message/transmission



3 Select Ringtone type

4 Select Ringtone data

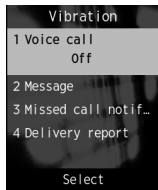
- Highlight Ringtone data → (Play) to sample.

Vibration

Select Vibration Pattern from six options: *Off*, and *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 5*.

1  → *Settings* → *Sounds & Alerts* → *Vibration*

2 Select types of incoming call/message/transmission



3 Select vibration






■ To cancel Vibration
Off

■ To select a Vibration Pattern
Pattern 1 to *Pattern 5*

● Highlight Vibration Pattern →  (Play) to play sample.

Advanced

Settings

- Adjust Volume ( P.12-10)
- Set Ringtone for Voice Call ( P.12-11)
- Set Ringtone other than Voice Call ( P.12-11)
- Set Ringtone Duration other than Voice Call ( P.12-11)
- Set Vibration ( P.12-11)

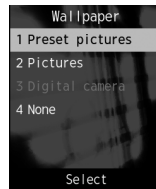
Standby Display Options

Set Pictures, etc. as Wallpaper in Standby.


Wallpaper

Set still image, etc. to appear in Standby. Alternatively, set *Wallpaper* to *None*.

1  → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*



2 Set Wallpaper

- To set an image in Data Folder
Select a file location → Select a file →  (Set)
- To set none
None

Advanced Settings (P.2-19)

Settings

- Change Wallpaper (P.12-12)
- Change Main Menu settings (P.12-12)
- Set Standby Display appearance (P.12-12)
- Adjust Display brightness (P.12-12)
- Set Dialing window font type (P.12-13)
- Set Dialing window font size (P.12-13)
- Set Dialing window font color (P.12-13)
- Set Dialing window background color (P.12-13)
- Set Operator name (P.12-13)
- Change user interface language (P.12-13)
- Set Time zone updating (P.12-13)
- Change Home time zone (P.12-13)
- Activate or cancel Daylight savings time adjustment (P.12-14)
- Set time (P.12-14)
- Set AM/PM (when Time format is set to 12H) (P.12-14)
- Set date (P.12-14)
- Change Time format (P.12-14)
- Change Date format (P.12-14)

Text Entry

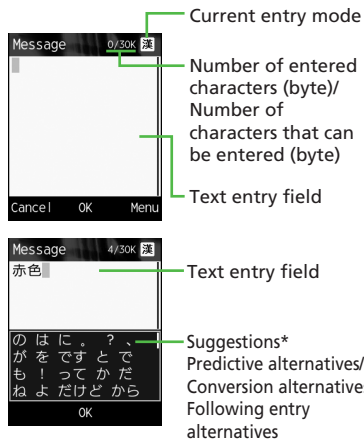
Enter Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphanumerics (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

Icon	Entry Mode	Icon	Entry Mode
漢	Kanji or Hiragana (P.2-9)	※	Symbols (double-byte) (P.2-10)
力	Katakana (double-byte) (P.2-9)	#@	Symbols (single-byte) (P.2-10)
力	Katakana (single-byte) (P.2-9)	絵	Pictograms (P.2-10)
A	Alphabets (double-byte) (P.2-9)	顔	Emoticons (P.2-10)
Ab	Alphabets (single-byte) (P.2-9)	韓	Hangul (P.2-11)
1	Number (double-byte) (P.2-9)	a	Alphabets (double-byte, lower case) (P.2-9)

Icon	Entry Mode	Icon	Entry Mode
12	Number (single-byte) (P.2-9)	ab	Alphabets (single-byte, lower case) (P.2-9)

See "Changing Entry Mode" (P.2-8) about toggling Entry Mode.

Text Entry Window



* Suggestions do not appear in Katakana, alphanumeric and number input modes. When the prediction entry function is disabled, suggestions are displayed by pressing (Convert) or (EngNum/カナ) to convert characters in Kanji/Kana entry mode.

- For Date field in Day and Time or Time field in Alarm which can only enter numbers, the text entry window does not appear. Enter numbers directly in the entry field of registration or setting window.
- When Voice Call arrives while entering text, simply answer the call. When the call ends, text entry window returns. When Alarm is activated, end Alarm to return to text entry window.

Text Entry Flow

Select Text entry mode → Enter text → Suggestion → Select suggestion

Changing Entry Mode

Toggle text entry mode: Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (single-/double-byte), alphabet, number (single-/double-byte), symbols (single-/double-byte), pictograms, emoticons or Hangul.

1 In text entry window,



2 Select entry mode

- In the text entry window, press for Symbols, for Pictograms and Emoticons.

Kana/Kanji

Use predictive entry to convert and enter characters. Alternatively, convert entered hiragana directly. Katakana or pictograms may appear in Suggestions. Example: Enter "鈴木"

1 In text entry window, 

2 漢かな

3  (3 times)

- "す" is entered.

4  →  (3 times) →

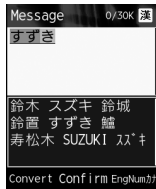


- "す" is entered.












5  (2 times)

- "き" is entered.

6 



7 Highlight "鈴木" from Suggestions → (Confirm)








- After entering hiragana, press  to add * or .
- Press  to cancel an entry.
- If you over-toggle target character, press  to toggle in reverse.
- To enter same character continuously, press  to move the cursor to the right.
- To set as Hiragana, enter characters, then press  (Confirm).
- If Suggestions does not appear, press  (Convert) → Use  to change conversion range → Use  to move the cursor to the alternative area → Highlight the target conversion alternative →  (Confirm) → Repeat steps for other characters.
- If conversion fails, try another reading of the word. For multiple Kanji words, try converting characters separately.
- While Suggestions appears, press  (Convert) for conversion alternatives. While conversion alternatives appear, press  (Predict) to return to Suggestions.

Kana/Alphabet/Number

1 In text entry window, 

2 Select entry mode

3 Enter text

- After entering katakana, press  to add * or .
- In Alphabet entry mode, enter a letter then press  to toggle case.
- Press  to cancel an entry.
- If you over-toggle target character, press  to toggle in reverse.
- To enter same character continuously, press  to move the cursor to the right.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press  (EngNumカナ) to toggle katakana/alphabet/numbers entry mode. Example: Enter "くも" and press  (EngNumカナ). クモ, C, or 22277777 appears in Suggestions.

Symbol






Alternatively, enter symbols such as \ or ! (☞P.13-9).

1 In text entry window,



- Press  or  (Next page) until target symbol appears.

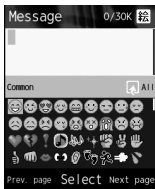
2 Highlight target character in Suggestions →



- Enter symbols continuously. To cancel symbol entry, press .
- Entered double-byte symbols remain as history and appear in Suggestions.  toggles the double-byte symbol log → double-byte symbols → single-byte symbols. In single-byte Katakana/Alphabet/Number and Hangul entry modes,  toggles the double-byte symbol log → single-byte symbols → double-byte symbols.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter characters and press  (Convert) to convert to symbols. Example: Enter "てん" and press  (Convert), "・" or "・・・" appear in Suggestions.

Pictograms/Emoticons




Enter not only Pictograms but also Emoticons by combine symbols (☞P.13-10).

1 In text entry window,



- Press  or  (Next page) until the target pictogram or emoticons appears.

2 Highlight target character in Suggestions →

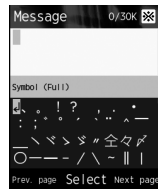
- Pictograms and emoticons can be entered consecutively. To cancel pictogram and emoticon entry, press .
- In message text/subject entry window, press  in conversion alternative area of pictograms to toggle **Common/All**. Select **Common** when using Pict General.
- Entered pictograms remain as history and appear in Suggestions.  toggles pictogram logs → pictograms → emoticons.
- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter "はーと", "でんわ" and convert to pictograms. Similarly, "わーい" or "えーん" can be converted to emoticons.

Line Break

Use these steps to enter line breaks in any entry mode.

1 In text entry window,

2 Highlight line break symbol →



- Alternatively, press  at the end of the sentence to insert a line break.

- Line breaks cannot be inserted in some entry windows (e.g., Subject window in Messaging).

Hangul































1 In text entry window, 

2 *Hangul*



3 Enter characters


- Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear and combine to create text.

Consonant Example (Key assignment)	
ㄱ	 (once)
ㅋ	 (twice)
ㆁ	 (3 times)
Vowel Example (Key assignment)	
아	  (1),  (.)
어	  (.),  (1)
오	  (.),  (-)
야	   
여	   
요	   
왜	  (.),  (-),  (1),  (.),  (1)

- Messages in Hangul can be received as S! Mail. However, S! Mail cannot be used to create messages in Hangul.

E-mail Address/URL Quick Entry

Save mail addresses/URLs for quick entry.

1 In text entry window for E-mail Address or URL, 
→ *Quick address list*

2 Select a target mail address/URL



Deleting/Editing

- 1 Use to move cursor to character to delete, and

- When a space is highlighted, the character before cursor is deleted.
- To delete all characters after cursor, press for 1+ seconds. If there is no character after cursor, all characters are deleted.
- Press for text entry window exit confirmation.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.2-19

- Specifying Range to Copy/Cut
- Pasting Copied or Cut Text
- Undoing Text Entry
- Jump to Top/End
- Setting Prediction Entry or Learning Function

Settings

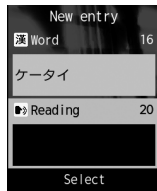
- Change font size in text entry window (P.12-12)
- Reset entry history to default (P.12-14)

User's Dictionary

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when Reading is entered.

Editing User's Dictionary

- 1 → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → *New entry*
- 2 Select Word field → Enter word or phrase
- 3 Select Reading field → Enter reading



- 4 (Save)

Saving to User's Dictionary

- 1 In text entry window, → *Add to dictionary*
- 2 Use to move cursor to the first character for adding text, and (Start)
 - To view the current saved word, press (UserDic) → Select *Edit entry*.
- 3 Use to set the range → (End)



- 4 Select Reading field → Enter text
- 5 (Save)

- If a line break is in the selected range, the character string before the line break is saved.

Advanced Settings (P.2-20)

- Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary

Settings

- Save entries to User's Dictionary (P.12-14)
- Edit User's Dictionary entries (P.12-14)
- Delete User's Dictionary entries (P.12-14)

Phonebook

Create up to 1,000 entries. Number of savable items per entry varies by USIM Card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to access USIM Card entries. Each entry contains the following items:

Item/Description	Location
Last name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes) USIM Card: Yes ¹
First name	
Double/single-byte (Saved as "Name" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes) USIM Card: Yes ¹
Reading last name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Reading" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes) USIM Card: Yes ¹
Reading first name	
Single-byte (Saved as "Reading" in USIM Card Phonebook)	Handset: Yes (up to 50 bytes) USIM Card: Yes ¹

Item/Description	Location
Phone number	
Saved with area code	Handset: Yes (5 entries/up to 32 bytes) USIM Card: Yes ^{1 2}
Phone icon	
Select one of seven icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: Yes ³
E-mail address	
Single-byte alphanumerics	Handset: Yes (5 entries/up to 128 bytes) USIM Card: Yes ¹ (1 entry)
E-mail address icon	
Select one of four icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No (1 icon)
Photo	
Still image appears for incoming Voice Call Select a Data Folder image or capture with Camera	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Ringtone	
Voice Call/Messages Selectable from Data Folder	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Vibration	
Set vibration for Voice Call/Messages	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Group	
Select from original 21 groups including "No group"	Handset: Yes USIM Card: Yes ²
Secret mode	
On/Off	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Birthday	
Date of birth	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Blood type	
Select one of four types	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Hobby	
Up to 100 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Company	
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Job title	
Enter up to 64 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Address	
Post code (40 bytes), Country (64 bytes), Province, City, Street and Additional information (128 bytes)	Handset: Yes (2 entries) USIM Card: No
Address icon	
Select one of two icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No
Homepage	
Enter up to 1,024 bytes	Handset: Yes (2 entries) USIM Card: No
Homepage icon	
Select one of three icons	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

Item/Description	Location
Memo	
Enter up to 512 bytes	Handset: Yes USIM Card: No

- 1 Number of savable characters varies by USIM Card.
- 2 Number of savable items varies by USIM Card.
- 3 Savable icon types vary by USIM Card.



- If a different USIM Card (with saved entries) is inserted, copy saved USIM entries to handset confirmation appears when handset is first powered on. Choose **Yes** to copy entries.

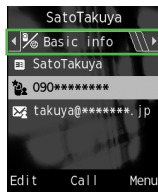
Note




- **Protect Important Information**
Phonebook entries may be lost/alterd if battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period; accidents/malfunctions may also affect entries. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information.

Phonebook Window

Phonebook entries (☞P.2-13) are divided into three tabs. Toggle the tabs to view information.

- 1  → Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞P.2-17) → Use  to toggle tabs



Tab	Item
 Basic info	Reading
	Phone number
	E-mail address
 Settings	Photo
	Ringtone
	Vibration
	Group
	Secret mode
	Birthday
	Blood type
	Hobby
	Company
	Job title
 Others	Address
	Homepage
	Memo

Creating New Entries

Save to handset or USIM Card. Default data location for Phonebook is **Phone**. Set to USIM Card as required (☞P.12-10).

Create new entry or save from Call Log record.

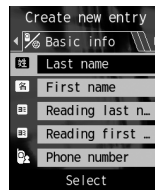
Saving Phonebook as a new entry

Create new entry; save Name, Reading, Phone Number and E-mail Address.

- For other items, see "Adding Information to Phonebook Entry" (☞P.2-20).


- 1  →  (New)



- If Save setting (☞P.12-10) is set to **Ask each time**, a message appears to prompt you to specify a saving location. Choose **Phone** or **USIM**.



New Entry Details




- 2 Select Last name field → Enter last name

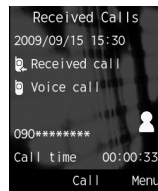
- 3 Select First name field → Enter first name
- 4 Select Reading last name field → Edit reading of last name as required
- 5 Select Reading first name field → Edit reading of first name as required
- 6 Select Phone number field → Enter a phone number → Select icon
- 7 Select E-mail address field → Enter mail address → Select icon
- 8  (Save)

- Enter 0-9, #, *, P (Pause), - and + (International code). Press  to toggle *, - and P. Press  for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- If a Memory Card file is selected for Incoming Image or Ringtone, copy file to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.
- When using Samsung New PC Studio to synchronize Phonebook entries with a PC, Secret entries are not synchronized to PC. If an entry is changed to a Secret entry, it can no longer be synchronized and is deleted from PC. Samsung New PC Studio is available for download from SAMSUNG Website (<http://fp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/830download.html>).

Saving Entries from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

- 1  (Received Calls) or  (Dialed Calls)
- 2 Select a Call Log record to save →  → Add to Phonebook



- 3 Select saving method

To save as a new entry

New → (P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry 2)

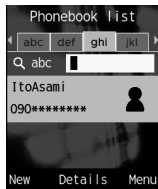
To update existing entry

Update → Search and select an entry (P.2-17) → Save a number to Phonebook (P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry 2)

Searching Phonebook

Use *A-ka-sa-ta-na*, *Reading* or *Group* to search Phonebook entries.

1 



Phonebook List

2  → *Settings* → *Search method*



3 *A-ka-sa-ta-na*, *Reading* or *Group*

- Selected search method is saved.

4 Search Phonebook

To search by *A-ka-sa-ta-na*

Phone number appears in Japanese syllabary, Alphabet, Hangul or Number tab.

Use  to toggle a target line → Select phonebook entry with 

- Alternatively, enter reading (or first part of reading) in abc field to search.

To search by *Reading*

View target Phonebook entry from search result

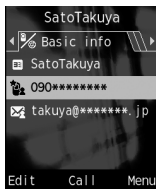
- Alternatively, enter reading (or first part of reading) in abc field to search.

To search by *Group*



Select a group → View target

Phonebook entry from search result


- Alternatively, after selecting a group, enter reading (or first part of reading) in abc field to search.

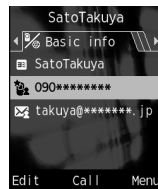


Entry Details

- If *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*, secret Phonebook entries do not appear. In Phonebook search window, press  → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) to see secret entries.

Calling from Phonebook

1 Search Phonebook (☞P.2-17) →  (Details) → Highlight target phone number




2 Make a call

To make a Voice Call




-  (Call) → *Voice call*

To make an international call




-  (Call) → *International call* → (☞P.3-11 International Call)

- Alternatively, highlight the intended phonebook entry on the list window →  → **Call** → **Voice call** or **International call** to make a call. When entry contains multiple numbers, the phone number set to **Voice call of Default number** (⊕ P.2-23) (if not set, the first phone number) is dialed. When the phone number selection screen appears (**Voice call of Default number** is set to **Not assigned**), select a phone number.

- **Calling from simple search or search result**

When **Simple search** (⊕ P.12-14) is set to **On**, press a key to use its assigned character to search for a phonebook entry with **Reading** that matches the assigned character. When the assigned character and **Reading** match, a corresponding name and phone number appear. Highlight a phone number →  or  (Select) → Press  (Call) to make a voice call.

- **Calling from phone number search or search result**


Enter four digits to search for entry beginning or ending with those digits. Entry name and phone number appear. Highlight a phone number →  or  (Select) → Press  (Call) to make a voice call.

Deleting Phonebook Entries



1

2 Delete entries

■ To delete an item



Highlight an entry to delete →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**


■ To delete multiple items

 → **Delete** → **Multiple** → Check phonebook entries to delete →  (Delete) → **Yes**

■ To delete all items

Delete all phonebook entries in Phone or USIM Card at once.

 → **Delete** → **All** → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → **Yes**

- Alternatively, in Entry Details window,  → **Delete** → **Yes**.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (ⓘ P.2-20)

- Creating Message from Phonebook
- Creating New Group (USIM Card)
- Adding Member to Group
- Removing Member from Group
- Viewing USIM Card Service Number
- Calling with Your Phone Number Shown
- Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial
- Sending Phonebook as vFile
- Creating vFile and Save in Data Folder
- Copying Entries between Phone & USIM
- Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®
- Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily
- Checking Memory Status
- Copy Item
- Setting Default Phone Number or Mail Address
- Enter and Save Phone Number
- Renaming Group

Settings

- Select Phonebook Save Location (ⓘ P.12-10)
- Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM) (ⓘ P.12-10)
- Change Search Method (ⓘ P.12-10)
- Backup Phonebook entries (ⓘ P.12-10)
- Change Phonebook font size (ⓘ P.12-10)
- Activate or cancel Simple Search (ⓘ P.12-14)

Advanced Settings

Main Menu

Setting Main Menu Style

● →  (Style) → Select a style → Select color to set with 

- Change menu appearance.

Standby Image


Rotating Still Images

● → *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper* → Select a file location → Select a file →  (Rotate) → ● (Set)

- To restore the default, press  (Reset).

Text Entry

Entering Date/Time




In text entry window, select Kanji/Kana entry mode and enter Hiragana with Keypad →  (EngNum力ナ) → Highlight entry in Suggestions for date and/or time → ● (Confirm)


Toggling Double-byte and Single-byte Symbols

In text entry window, while displaying Suggestions for double-/single-byte symbols,





Specifying Range to Copy/Cut

In text entry window,  → *Copy* or *Cut* → Move the cursor with  to the first character to copy/cut and press ● (Start) → Specify range with  → ● (End)

- To copy or cut all text in text entry window, press  (All).
- Copied or cut text remains even after powering off.

Pasting Copied or Cut Text


In text entry window, move cursor with  to the position to paste →  → *Paste*

Undoing Text Entry


In text entry window,  → *Undo*

- In Kanji/Kana entry mode, undo operations immediately after performing *Cut*, *Paste* or *Delete*. Undoing conversion is also available.

Jump to Top/End

In text entry window,  → *Cursor position*
→ Select an item

Setting Prediction Entry or Learning Function

In text entry window,  → *Conversion*

■ To activate or cancel the prediction entry function


Prediction on or *Prediction off*

■ To activate or cancel the learning function

Learning on or *Learning off*

■ To reset entry log

Reset learning → Enter Phone Password →

 (OK) → *Yes*

■ To reset logs of pictograms or symbols

Clear history


User's Dictionary

Deleting Entries from User's Dictionary


 → *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User's dictionary* → *Edit entry*


■ To delete an item

Highlight an entry of User's Dictionary to delete →

 → *Delete*

■ To delete all items

 → *Delete all* → Enter Phone Password →




 (OK) → *Yes*

Phonebook

Adding Information to Phonebook Entry

 →  (New)

■ To save Group

Use  to switch to  *Settings* → Select Group field → Select a group →  (Save)

■ To set Secret mode

Use  to switch to  *Settings* → Select Secret mode field → Select an item →  (Save)

■ To save Birthday

Use  to switch to  *Settings* → Select Birthday field → Enter a birthday →  (Save)




■ To save Blood type

Use  to switch to  *Settings* → Select Blood type field → Select a blood type →  (Save)

■ To save Hobby

Use  to switch to  *Settings* → Select Hobby field → Enter text →  (Save)

■ To save Company

Use  to switch to  *Others* → Select Company field → Enter company name →  (Save)

■ To save Job title

Use  to switch to  *Others* → Select Job title field → Enter job title →  (Save)

To save Address

Use to switch to **Others** → Select Address field → Select Zip code field → Enter postal code → Select Country field → Enter country name → Select Province field → Enter province name → Select City field → Enter city name → Select Street field → Enter street name → Select Additional information field → Enter additional information → (OK) → Select an icon → (Save)

To save URL

Use to switch to **Others** → Select Homepage field → Enter URL → Select an icon → (Save)

To save Memo

Use to switch to **Others** → Select Memo field → Enter text → (Save)

- Items other than Group are unavailable in USIM Card Phonebook.

Setting Incoming Image to Phonebook Entry

→ (New) → Use to switch to **Settings** → Select Photo field

To set from saved still image

Pictures → Select a file → (Save)

- With Memory Card inserted, select a file from **Pictures** or **Digital camera** folder.

To set by capturing still image

Take photo → Capture still image → (Camera)

To cancel set incoming image

Off → (Save)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Ringtone to Phonebook Entry

→ (New) → Use to switch to **Settings** → Select Ringtone field

To set Ringtone for Voice Call

Voice call → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Save)

To set Ringtone for Message

Messages → **Assign tone** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Done) → (Save)

To set ringtone duration for Message

Messages → **Duration** → Enter time → (Done) → (Done) → (Save)

- If a Memory Card file is set as ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. If file is copy protected, move file to handset first confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Vibration to Phonebook Entry

→ (New) → Use to switch to **Settings** → Select Vibration field → Select a ringtone type → highlight a vibration pattern → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Save)

Creating Message from Phonebook

→ Highlight a phonebook entry to create a message → → **Create message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → S! Mail 5, P.4-7 SMS 5

Creating New Group (USIM Card)

→ → **New group** → Select Group name field → Enter a group name → (Save)

- Set search method to **Group** (P.2-17) and display USIM Phonebook to create new group (P.2-22).

Adding Member to Group

→ Select a group to add a member → → **Add member** → Check a member to add → (Add)

- Set search method to **Group** to add (P.2-17).

Removing Member from Group

→ Select a group to delete a member → → **Remove member** → Check a member to delete → (Remove)

- Set search method to **Group** to operate (ⓅP.2-17).
- Removed member is not deleted from Phonebook.

Showing or Hiding Caller ID

→ Highlight a phonebook entry to make a call → → **Hide/Show my ID**

■ To follow the settings of caller ID notification service

None → or (Call)

■ To show a phone number

Show my ID → or (Call)

■ To hide a phone number

Hide my ID → or (Call)

Adding Phonebook Entry to Speed Dial

→ Search the phonebook and select an entry (ⓅP.2-17) → → **Add to Speed dial** → Select a phone number field to save

Sending Phonebook as vFile

→ Search and select a phonebook entry to send (ⓅP.2-17) → → **Send**

■ To send via message

Via message → (ⓅP.4-4 S! Mail ②)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (ⓅP.11-5 Sending One by One ②)

Creating and Saving vFiles

→ Search the phonebook and select an entry (ⓅP.2-17) → → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone** or **Memory card** → **Yes**

- To save a file to **Memory card**, insert Memory Card.

Copying Entries between Phone & USIM

→ Highlight an entry to copy → → **Copy to USIM** or **Copy to phone**

■ To copy an item

Selected → **Yes**

- To copy 1 item from details window, press (Details) on list window → Press and operate.

■ To copy multiple items

Multiple → Check phonebook entries → (Copy) → **Yes**

■ To copy Phonebook stored in both handset and USIM Card at once

All → **Yes**

Printing Phonebook Details via Bluetooth®

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓅP.2-17) → → **Print via bluetooth** → (ⓅP.6-12 Printing via Bluetooth® ④)

Specifying Saving Destination for Phonebook Entries

→ → **Settings** → **Save settings** → Select an item

toggling Phonebook View between USIM & Phone

→ → **Settings** → **Change view** → Select an item

- Change remains even if handset is powered off.

Canceling Phonebook Secret Mode Temporarily

→ → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → (OK)

- If **Secret mode** is set to **Hide**, Secret entries appear for current session only.

Viewing USIM Card Service Number

→ → **Service number**

- The item **Service number** may not appear for some USIM Card.

Checking Memory Status

→ → **Memory status**

- To delete contents of current item, press (Delete) (☎P.10-13 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Copy Item

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (☎P.2-17) → Highlight an item to copy → → **Copy item**

Setting Default Phone Number or Mail Address

→ Search for a phonebook entry to set and select it (☎P.2-17) → → **Set default number** → **Voice call** or **Messages** → Select phone number or mail address → (Save)

- To leave default phone number or mail address undefined, highlight item and press (Reset) to set to **Not assigned**.
- Set default phone number only for handset Phonebook.

Opening Website from Phonebook

→ Search phonebook entries with homepage saved and select an entry (☎P.2-17) → Highlight a homepage address to connect → (Connect)

Editing Phonebook

→ Search Phonebook and select entry (☎P.2-17) → (Edit) → (☎P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry)

- To edit secret Phonebook entry, set **Secret mode** to **Show**.

Enter and Save Phone Number

Enter phone number → → **Add to Phonebook**

■ To save new entry

New → (☎P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry)

■ To update entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (☎P.2-17) → Enter each item (☎P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry)

- Alternatively, during a call, → select **Add to Phonebook**.
- Only Name, Reading, E-mail address, and Group can be entered in USIM Card entries.

Changing Group Settings

→ **Phonebook** → **Group settings** → Select a group to set

■ To set incoming image

Select Group image field → Select a file location → Select a file → (Save)

■ To set ringtone for Voice call

Select Ringtone field → **Voice call** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set ringtone for Message

Select Ringtone field → **Messages** → **Assign tone** → Select a file location → Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (Done) → (Done) → (Save)




■ To set ringtone duration for Message








Select Ringtone field → **Messages** → **Duration** → Enter time → (Done) → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Vibration




Select Vibration field → Select a ringtone type →

Highlight a vibration pattern →  (Play) →

 (Select) →  (Done) →  (Save)

- To cancel set image or vibration and save the entry, highlight Image/Vibration field → Press  (Reset) →  (Save).
- To cancel set ringtone and save the entry, select Ringtone field → Highlight item to reset → Press  (Reset) →  (Done) →  (Save).
To cancel all ringtones, highlight Ringtone field → Press  (Reset) →  (Save).
- Set only for handset group.
- Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over Group settings.

Renaming Group

 → **Phonebook** → **Group settings** → 
→ **View from phone group** or **View from USIM group** → Select a group to edit → Select Group name field → Enter a group name →  (Save)

- When **Change view** (P.2-22) is set to **Phone**, **View from USIM group** appears; when **USIM**, **View from phone group** appears.

Calling



Call Types & Optional Services	3-2
Voice Call	3-4
Making a Voice Call	3-4
Receiving a Voice Call	3-4
In-Call Operations	3-5
Speed Dial	3-6
Saving Numbers to Speed Dial	3-6
Using Speed Dial	3-6
Emergency Numbers	3-7
Answering Machine	3-7
Activating & Canceling	3-7
Playing Records	3-8
Deleting Records	3-8
Black List	3-8
Rejecting Incoming Call	3-8
Rejecting Specified Numbers	3-9
Rejecting Unknown Numbers	3-9
Rejecting Withheld Numbers	3-9
Rejecting Payphone Calls	3-9
Rejecting Unavailable Numbers	3-9
Call Log Records	3-10
Viewing Records	3-10
Calling via Records	3-10
Deleting Records	3-10
Checking Call Time/Cost	3-11
International Call	3-11
Global Roaming Service	3-12
Changing Network Mode	3-12
Setting Network	3-12
Making a Call Overseas	3-13

Optional Services	3-14
Voicemail	3-14
Call Forwarding	3-16
Call Waiting	3-16
Conference Call	3-17
Call Barring	3-18
Caller ID	3-19
Advanced Settings	
Call	3-20
Call Logs	3-21
Conference Call	3-22

Call Types & Optional Services

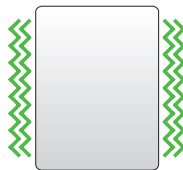
Handset supports Voice Call and Optional Services such as Voicemail and Call Forwarding.

Voice Call

Make a Voice Call (➔P.3-4).



When you cannot answer a call



Use Answering Machine, etc. (➔P.3-7).

Alternatively, use Optional Services such as Voicemail or Call Forwarding (➔P.3-14).



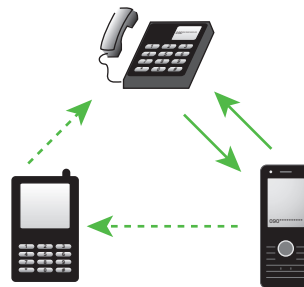
Global Roaming Service

8305C is compatible with SoftBank Mobile Global Roaming Service.
 Subscribe to use handset outside Japan (➡P.3-12).
 Alternatively, make international calls from Japan.



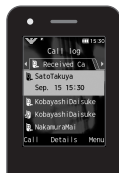
Optional Services

Handset supports Voicemail and Call Forwarding (➡P.3-14).



Call Forwarding

Call Log Records



Check total call time and the last call time.
 Set maximum call cost (➡P.3-11).

Voice Call

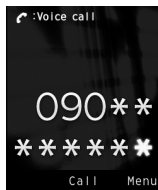
This section describes making a voice call and operations during a voice call.

Making a Voice Call

Directly enter phone number to call.

To make a call from Phonebook, see "Calling from Phonebook" (P.2-17).

1 Enter a phone number including area code



Phone Number
Entry Window

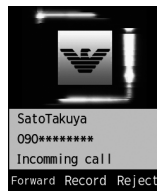
2 Confirm entered phone number → or (Call)

3 To end the call →

- To correct entered digit, use to move cursor to the digit to delete and press . Press for 1+ seconds to delete all.
- To enter "P (pause)", press twice. Press for 1+ seconds to enter "+" (International code)".
- When the line is busy, press to end the call and try again later. If **Auto Redial** (P.12-19) is **On**, number is automatically redialed. Press (Cancel) or to cancel redialing.
- If Earphone Microphone is connected, set **Earphone call activate** (P.12-20) to **On**, to call specified phone number by pressing the switch of Earphone Microphone for 1+ seconds. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.

Receiving a Voice Call


1 Voice Call window appears,



2 To end the call →

- When **Any key answer** (P.12-14) is **On**, press any key except , , , , and to accept call.
- To place caller on hold, press . To connect the call, press (Accept) or .
- To adjust ringer volume, press or .
- If Earphone Microphone is connected, press Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept Voice Calls. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.
- To put a current call on hold, a separate subscription is required to use either Call Waiting (P.3-16) or Conference Call (P.3-17). No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

● Missed Call Window

Missed call window appears for unanswered calls. Press  (View) to view Received calls (➔P.3-10).

● Ringtone

Specify ringtones by Phonebook entry or group (➔P.2-21, P.2-23). If not set, active Mode Setting applies (➔P.1-15).

If **Secret mode** is set to **Hide** when a call from a secret entry number is received, active Mode Setting applies.



● Incoming Call Window

If a caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears. If saved in Phonebook, name also appears. If caller hides Caller ID, **Withheld** appears.

If incoming call image has been saved in Phonebook or for a group, saved image also appears (➔P.2-21, P.2-23).

If **Secret mode** is set to **Hide** when a call from a secret entry is received, only number appears.

● When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding or Voicemail to handle calls. While handset rings/vibrates, press  (Forward) to forward the call to Voicemail or designated number immediately (➔P.3-15, P.3-16). Alternatively, press  (Record) to record caller message on handset (➔P.3-7).

In-Call Operations

Adjusting Volume

Adjust the earpiece volume.


1 During a call, or

- Adjusted volume remains set, even after powering off.

Putting a Call on Hold

To put a call on hold, and to resume call:

1 During a call, (Hold)




- When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting or Conference Call is required to use this function. If you do not subscribe to either service, this function is disabled.
- To reconnect call, press  (Answer).

Recording a Call

Record hearing voice.

1 During a call, → **Record** → (Record)

2 (Stop)

- Record up to 2 minutes during a call.
- To pause recording, press  (Pause). Press  (Record) to resume recording; Press  (Save) to save recording up to paused point.
- Recorded sound file is saved to **Ring songs · tones** in Data Folder.
- If subscribed to Call Waiting, recording stops when receiving another incoming call and incoming call window appears.
- Recording stops automatically after the call is ended, and voice file is saved.

Creating Text Memo

Create Text Memo during a call.

1 During a call, → **Memo** → Enter text memo

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (➔P.3-20)

- Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook
- Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number
- Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window
- Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window
- Calling with Your Phone Number Shown
- Talking in Small Voice

- Switching Headset/Phone
- Setting Mute
- Making New Call during a Call
- Searching Phonebook during Call
- Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook
- Viewing Call Log during a Call
- Creating New Message during Call
- Sending Push Tones
- Ending Call by Menu Operation


Settings




- Set Side Keys to activate Reject Call or mute ringer (☞ P.12-14)
- Set Any Key answer (☞ P.12-14)
- Show or hide your own number when calls (☞ P.12-19)
- Set handset to automatically redial busy numbers (☞ P.12-19)
- Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction (☞ P.12-20)
- Enable or disable calling via Earphone Microphone (☞ P.12-20)
- Adjust Earpiece volume (☞ P.12-20)

Speed Dial

Saving Numbers to Speed Dial

Save frequently used phone numbers to Speed Dial to make calls with simple operation. Save up to 10 items for Speed Dial.



- 1  → *Phonebook* → *Speed dial*
- 2 Select a field to save an entry
- 3 Search Phonebook and select an entry (☞ P.2-17) → Select a phone number to save

- To change saved phone number, in list window, highlight entry →  (Change) → *Yes* → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞ P.2-17) → Select number.
- To delete saved phone number, in list window, highlight entry →  → *Delete* → *Yes*.
- To delete all, in list window, press  and select *Clear all* → Choose *Yes*.
- Secret entry phone numbers cannot be saved as Speed Dial.
- Setting a Speed Dial number to Secret cancels Speed Dial setting automatically.

Using Speed Dial

- 1 Select from  to  that are saved as Speed Dial

- 2  or 

- To compose a message, after Step 1, press .
- Enter Entry No. with *Simple search On*, for names and phone numbers. The display disappears in about 5 seconds. When  appears, make a call with Speed Dial.

Emergency Numbers

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Maritime Safety Agency). These numbers can be dialed even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

Handset Status	Emergency Numbers
Offline mode activated (☎P.1-14)	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (☎P.12-18)	110, 119, 118
Phone lock activated (☎P.9-3)	None
Password lock activated (☎P.9-4)	110, 119, 118
Required PIN not entered (☎P.9-4)	None
USIM Card not be authenticated (☎P.9-4)	None
Outgoing Call Barring activated (☎P.3-18)	110, 119, 118

Emergency Location Report

When calls are placed to Police or other emergency agencies from handset, handset location information is automatically sent to the corresponding agency.

Handset transmits location based on base station positioning information.

- Location accuracy may vary by geography or signal conditions. Always verify your location with address or nearby landmark.
- Base station positioning accuracy ranges from several hundred meters to 10 kilometers. This information may differ from actual location due to distance of the closest base station location.
- This function is only available if the agency receiving an emergency call has implemented infrastructure for receiving location information.
- If you hide Caller ID by dialing 184 before calling an emergency number, your location information is not sent. However, authorities may access this information when necessary.
- No subscription/communication fee required.


Note

- Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on available network, signal conditions or handset settings.



Answering Machine

Handset records up to three 15-second caller messages.

Activating & Canceling

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answering machine* → *Setting*


2 On or Off

- When *On*,  appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press  for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Answering Machine.
- The caller message is recorded in Call log.



Note

- Answering Machine is not available if handset is powered off, out of the service area, or in Offline mode. Use the optional Voicemail service to handle missed incoming calls.
- At least 600 KB of free space of handset memory is required to use Answering Machine.


Playing Records

1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Answering machine* →
Recordings

2 Highlight an item →  (Play)


- When a message is recorded in Answering Machine,  appears in Standby.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press  to play recorded message.

Deleting Records


1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Answering machine* →
Recordings

2 Delete recording

■ To delete an entry

Highlight content →  (Delete) →
Yes

■ To delete all items


 (Delete all) → Enter Phone
Password →  (OK) → *Yes*



- Answering Machine contents are deleted, but call log remains as missed calls.

Black List

Other than reject incoming call, you can also set handset to automatically reject calls from specified phone numbers and reject calls from unknown numbers (➤P.12-19).

Rejecting Incoming Call


1 During incoming call,
 (Reject)

- The rejected call is recorded in Call Log.
- When *Side key* (➤P.12-14) is set to **Reject**, press  for 1+ seconds to reject an incoming call.
- If not using Call Forwarding or Voicemail, while receiving a call, press  (Forward) to reject the call. Busy line message appears on caller's handset. If caller's handset does not support this function, the message does not appear.


Rejecting Specified Numbers





1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Reject list* → *On/Off* → *On*

- When Black list call arrives, the caller hears a busy tone and the call is not connected. Press  (View) to check missed calls.
- To accept a call from the specified phone number, select *Off*.

3 *Edit black list*

4  → *Add* → *Direct input*,
Phonebook or *Call log* → *Save*
a phone number

- To edit saved phone numbers, select *Edit black list* → Highlight phone number →  (Select) → Edit phone number →  (OK) →  (Save).
- To delete saved phone number, select *Edit black list* → Highlight entry →  → *Delete* → *Selected* or *All* → *Yes*. To delete all, enter Phone Password.

Rejecting Unknown Numbers

1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Unknown* → *On*

- To accept calls from unknown numbers, set *Off*.

Rejecting Withheld Numbers

1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Withheld* → *On*

- To accept withheld calls, set *Off*.

Rejecting Payphone Calls

1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Payphone* → *On*

- To accept calls from payphones, set *Off*.

Rejecting Unavailable Numbers











1  → *Settings* → *Call settings*
→ *Reject incoming calls*

2 *Unavailable* → *On*

- To accept calls when number is unavailable, set *Off*.

Advanced


Settings

- Activate or cancel Answering Machine ( P.12-18)
- Set Answering Machine response time ( P.12-18)
- Play Answering Machine records ( P.12-19)
- Set Answering Machine response language ( P.12-19)
- Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers ( P.12-19)
- Create or edit Black List ( P.12-19)
- Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers ( P.12-19)
- Accept or reject calls when number is withheld ( P.12-19)
- Accept or reject calls from payphones ( P.12-19)
- Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable ( P.12-19)

Call Log Records


Select Received Calls or Dialed Calls. Confirm call type, number and call time & cost, or dial records directly. Call Log holds up to 500 Received Call and Dialed Call records each.

Viewing Records







- 1  (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls)




Call Log
(Received Calls)




- 2 Highlight a record to confirm
→  (Details)

Call Log Record Icons



-  : Dialed Voice Call
-  : Received Voice Call
-  : Missed Voice Call
-  : Rejected Voice Call
-  : Voicemail Notification
-  : Received Call Notification

- In **Security**, if **Secret mode** is set to **Hide**, names etc. of Secret Phonebook entries are hidden in Call Log.
- Alternatively, in Standby, press  → Phonebook → **Call log** → **Received calls** or **Dialed calls**.


Calling via Records

- 1  (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls)
- 2 Highlight record →  (Call) → **Voice call**



Deleting Records

- 1  (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls)
- 2 Delete a record



To delete an item



Highlight record →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**

To delete multiple items

 → **Delete** → **Multiple** → Check records →  (Delete) → **Yes**







To delete all items

 → **Delete** → **All** → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → **Yes**

- To confirm and delete records one by one, after Step 1, highlight record →  (Details) → Confirm and press  → **Delete** → **Yes**.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (P.3-21)


-  Sending Message from Call Log Records
-  Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phonebook
-  Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List
-  Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log
-  Adding International Code and Country Number to Call Log Record Numbers
-  Showing Caller ID when Calling Call Log Record

Checking Call Time/Cost


Show charge after call may not be available depending on your subscription status. When **Show charge after call** is disabled, **Set max cost limit** is also unavailable.

Call settings menu includes items below.

Set	Settings
All calls	Confirm approximate total call time/cost or reset it.
Last call	Confirm approximate call time/cost of the previous call.
Data counter	Confirm approximate incoming/outgoing data volume or reset it.
Show charge after call	Set whether to show call time/cost after ending a call.
Set currency	Set or change currency.
Set max cost limit	Set the limit for call cost.








1  → **Settings** → **Call settings**
→ **Call time & cost**

2 Select item

• To reset item, press  (Reset).




Advanced





Settings

- Check Call Time/Cost ( P.12-18)
- Check last Call Time/Cost ( P.12-18)
- Check Data Counter ( P.12-18)
- Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls ( P.12-18)
- Change Call Cost Currency ( P.12-18)
- Set Call Cost Limit ( P.12-18)
- Cancel Call Cost Limit ( P.12-18)

International Call

Allows you to make International call from Japan.

- 1 Enter a phone number including area code
- 2  → **International call**
- 3 Select a country/Select **Enter Code** and enter a country number → **Japan** → **Confirm phone number** →  or  (Call)

- To call a SoftBank handset overseas, simply dial the receiver's phone number, regardless of the country.
- Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds to enter "+" → Enter a country number → Enter a phone number excluding the first "0" → Press  or  (Call) to make an international call. International code, saved in **International code** ( P.12-17) is added.

Advanced

Settings

- Save International Code ( P.12-17)


Global Roaming Service

For details on overseas usage, see SoftBank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Changing Network Mode

Network mode shows the Communication Standard (3G and GSM) of handset. Set and switch the network.

By default, network mode is selected automatically. Manual selection is also available.

1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select network*

2 Select Network Mode

■ **To activate automatically**
Automatic

■ **To activate manually**
Manual → *3G/GSM, 3G* or *GSM*

● Network Mode Setting

Automatic:

Automatically switches the mode according to network condition.

3G:

Use within 3G/UMTS service areas in and outside Japan.

GSM:

Use within GSM service areas outside Japan.


● Usually set *Automatic*.

Setting Network

There is major network such as 3rd generation 3G provided by SoftBank as 3G, or many countries standard GSM.

Selecting Network to Access

To select network (service provider) for the area where you use handset:

1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select operator*


2 Select Network Mode

■ **To set automatically**
Automatic

■ **To specify manually**
Manual → Select an operator



Setting Preferred Network

Edit network list preferentially selected when *Automatic* is set.



1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *International call* → *Select operator* → *Preferred network*

2 Edit Preferred network list

■ **To select and insert from the network list**



Move the cursor to a position to insert
→  → *Insert* → *Network list* →
Highlight a network →  (Insert)


■ **To select and add from the network list**

 → *Add* → *Network list* →
Highlight a network →  (Add)

● A network is added at the end of the list.


To insert or add a new network




 → *Insert or Add* → *New network*
 → Highlight Country code field → Enter a country number → Highlight Network code field → Enter a network code → Select Network name field → Enter a network name → Select Operator field → *GSM* or *3G* →  (Insert or Add)

- To delete network, after Step 1, highlight a network →  → *Delete* → Choose *Yes*
- Items to set in *New Network* is as follows.
Country code: Up to 3 digits
Network code: Up to 3 digits
Network name: Up to 20 digits
Network type: Select from GSM/3G

Making a Call Overseas

Emergency calls may not be possible outside Japan depending on available network, signal conditions or handset settings (P.3-7).

1 Enter a phone number including area code → **2 Make a call****To make a call to Japan**
*To Japan***To make a call to a country other than Japan**
Other country → Select country to call**To make a call to landline or handset within the country**
Keep number

- To make a call by directly entering Country number, press  for 1+ seconds to enter "+". Enter Country number, phone number excluding the first "0", and press  or  (Call) to dial. To make a call to Italy, include the first "0" if any.
- If "+ Country code" is included in the beginning of phone number, Step 2 is not required.

Advanced**Settings**

- Switch Network Mode (P.12-17)
- Save International Code (P.12-17)
- Add/change/delete Country Number (P.12-17)
- Select network to access (P.12-17)
- Insert preferred network from list (P.12-17)
- Add preferred network from list (P.12-17)
- Delete preferred network from list (P.12-17)
- Add a new preferred network (P.12-18)
- Retrieve Network Information manually (P.12-22)

Optional Services

Available optional services are as follows.

Service	Description
Voicemail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access caller messages via handset from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set Missed Call Notification to notify missed calls by SMS when handset is off or out-of-range (P.3-15).
Call forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Call waiting*	Put caller on hold to answer another incoming call or alternate between callers. Or toggle lines among multiple lines simultaneously.
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or connect up to six parties simultaneously.
Call barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.

Service	Description
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when making calls.

*A separate subscription is required to use service.

Note

- When **Out** appears, services are unavailable. For details on operations from landline phones or services, access SoftBank Mobile website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Voicemail

According to the following conditions, handset forwards incoming voice Call to Voicemail Center.

Forwarding Condition	Description
Always	Handset does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically. Missed Call does not appear.
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or handset is outside service area.

Note

- Voicemail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.
- Activating Voicemail cancels Call Forwarding.

Activating Voicemail

1 → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Voice mail on*

2 Select an item

■ **To forward a call to Voicemail Center immediately**
Always (0 sec.)

■ **To set ring time before forwarding**
No reply (5 to 30 sec.) → *5 seconds, 10 seconds, 15 seconds, 20 seconds, 25 seconds or 30 seconds*

● When *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer an incoming call within the set ring time so call is not forwarded. Or press (Forward) to forward incoming call immediately.

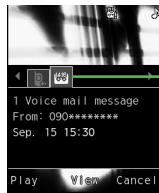
Canceling Voicemail

1 → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate All* → *Yes*

Note
● *Deactivate All* also cancels Call forwarding.

Listening to Voicemail Message

When a caller saves a Voicemail message, a notification appears in Standby and appears at the top of Display.



Indicated by Icons and Messages

When Notification Appears

(Play)

● To check the details of Voicemail message, press (View) while a notification window is displayed.

● To close the notification window without playing Voicemail message, press (Cancel).

When Notification does not Appear

Enter "1416" → or (Call)

● When Voicemail message is played on handset, on Display disappears.

Activating Incoming Call Notification

Receive SMS for calls missed while handset is off or outside service area; or when caller saves message at Voicemail Center.

1 Enter "1414" → or (Call)

● To call from landline phone in Japan, enter "090-665-1414".

2 Follow guidance

● Alternatively, in Standby, → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Missed call notification* → (Call).

● SMS notification is saved as Received call.

● Missed Call Notification is complimentary.

Advanced

Settings

- Forward all calls to Voicemail (Handset does not ring) (P.12-16)
- Forward unanswered calls to Voicemail (specify ring time) (P.12-16)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (P.12-16)
- Confirm current Voicemail/Call Forwarding settings (P.12-16)
- Listen to Voicemail message (P.12-16)
- Set Missed Call Notification (P.12-17)

Call Forwarding


Forward incoming calls to a specified number in accordance with the predefined forwarding condition (P.3-14).

Note

- Call Forwarding and Voicemail cannot be used at the same time.
- Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voicemail previously activated.

Setting Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Call forwarding on*
- 2 *Always (0 sec.) or No reply (5 to 30 sec.)*
- 3 **Set forwarding number**

To set previously forwarded number


Last set number → Select previously forwarded number

To set from Phonebook


Phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-17) → Select phone number

To set by entering phone number

- Enter number* → Enter phone number
- To activate Call Forwarding with *No reply* set, select duration after Step 3.

- When *No reply (5 to 30 sec.)* is set, answer an incoming call within the set ring time so call is not forwarded. Or press  (Forward) to forward incoming call immediately.

Canceling Call Forwarding

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Voice mail/Call forwarding* → *Deactivate All* → *Yes*

Note

- Voicemail service previously activated is also canceled.

Advanced


Settings

- Activate and set Call Forwarding (P.12-16)
- Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding (P.12-16)
- Confirm current Voicemail/Call Forwarding settings (P.12-16)

Call Waiting

A separate subscription is required to use this service. This function is only applicable to Voice Calls.

Activating/Canceling Call Waiting


- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call waiting*
- 2 *On or Off*

- To check current status, select *Get status* in Step 2.

Receiving a Second Call


When receiving another incoming call during a call, you will hear an interrupt sound and see a notification. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.

1 When you hear the interrupt sound, (Accept) → *Hold active call*


- Alternatively, press  to put the current call on hold and answer a new call.
- To disconnect the current call and answer a new call, select *End active call*.

2 Switch party


■ To switch party


Highlight a party to talk with →  (Group call) → *Switch*

■ To end selected call

Highlight a party to end a call →  (Group call) → *End this call*



■ To end all calls

 (Group call) → *End all calls*

- When one party ends a call with another on hold, press  (Answer) to talk with the held party again.
- When Call Forwarding or Voicemail is set and the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voicemail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is unavailable.

Advanced

Settings

- Activate or cancel Call Waiting ( P.12-16)
- Confirm current Call Waiting settings ( P.12-16)



Conference Call

A separate subscription is required to use this service. Talk with a maximum of 6 parties simultaneously.

Making New Call During a Call

When a new call is connected, first party is placed on hold.

1 During a call, Enter phone number


- To select from Phonebook,  → Select *Phonebook* → Search and select Phonebook ( P.2-17) → Select Phone number.

2 or (Call) → Talk when a call is connected

- Calling to another party besides the two is only available with Conference call function (and is not available when any party is on hold).


Switching Party


1 During a call with multiple parties, highlight a party to talk with → (Group call) → *Switch*

- When the connected party ends the call during Conference Call, party on hold remains on hold. To talk with the party on hold, press  (Answer) and cancel hold.

Talking with All Parties

1 During a call with multiple parties, (Group call) → *Call to all*

- To talk with one party again, highlight a party to talk with during a call →  (Group call) → Select *Call to this person*.

- To end all calls, press  (Group call) during a call → Select *End all calls*.
- When one party ends the call during Conference Call, continue talking with remaining parties.

Advanced

 Advanced Settings  P.3-22

Call Barring

Bar outgoing/incoming voice calls or SMS by the conditions listed below.

Item	Description
Outgoing call	
Bar all outgoing calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to all but emergency numbers.
Bar all international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to other than the country where you stay.
Bar international calls	Disables calling or sending SMS to the country where you stay and Japan.
Incoming call	
Bar all incoming calls	Blocks all incoming calls or SMS.
Bar all roaming calls	Blocks all incoming calls or SMS from other than the country where you stay.



- Setting Call Barring requires Network Password (the 4-digit number dedicated to Call Barring service specified the subscription). Network Password can be changed (☎P.3-19).
- A message appears indicating that outgoing Call Barring is active. The message may appear after a while depending on service area.

Note

- If incorrect Network Password is entered 3 consecutive times, Call Barring service is disabled. In this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For details, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-22).
- If Call Forwarding or Voicemail is active, *All outgoing calls* and *All incoming calls* cannot be set (Call Forwarding and Voicemail services override them).



Restricting/Canceling Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Set Call Barring for outgoing calls and/or incoming calls for each type of call/transmission.


- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
- 2 Select a restriction type
 - **For outgoing calls**
Outgoing call → *Bar all outgoing calls*, *Bar all international calls* or *Bar international calls*
 - **For incoming calls**
Incoming call → *Bar all incoming call* or *Bar all roaming calls*
- 3 *On or Off*
- 4 Enter Network Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Canceling All Barring





Cancel all barring for outgoing or incoming calls.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
- 2 *Cancel all barring*
- 3 Enter Network Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Checking Call Barring Status

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring*
- 2 *Get status* → *All outgoing calls, All international calls, International calls, All incoming calls or All roaming calls*

Changing Network Password

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Optional services* → *Call barring* → *Set security code*
- 2 Enter current Network Password →  (OK)
- 3 Enter new Network Password →  (OK)
- 4 Enter new Network Password again →  (OK)

Advanced


Settings

- Set Outgoing Call Barring (☎ P.12-16)
- Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring (☎ P.12-16)
- Cancel all Call Barring (☎ P.12-16)
- Confirm current Call Barring settings (☎ P.12-16)
- Change Network Password (☎ P.12-17)

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from handset.

Showing & Hiding Caller ID

- 1  → *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Show my number*
- 2 *On/Off* → *On or Off*

- After Step 1, select *Get status* to confirm the current setting.
- Regardless of this setting, you can show/hide your phone number every time when you make a call (☎ P.3-20).

Advanced

Settings

- Show or hide your own number when calls (☎ P.12-19)

Advanced Settings**Call****Saving Entered Phone Number to Phonebook**

Enter a full phone number including area code → → **Add to Phonebook** → (P.2-23 Enter and Save Phone Number)

Creating New Message Addressed to Entered Number

Enter a full phone number → → **Create message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS)

Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Phonebook Window

In the phone number entry window, → **Phonebook**

Switching Phone Number Entry Window to Call Log Window

In the phone number entry window, → **Call log**

Calling with Your Phone Number Shown

Enter a full phone number including area code → → **Hide/Show my ID**

To follow Show my number setting

None → or (Call)

To show phone number

Show my ID → or (Call)

To hide phone number

Hide my ID → or (Call)

- Alternatively, enter "186" → Enter a phone number → Press or (Call) to make a call with your phone number shown.
- Alternatively, enter "184" → Enter a phone number → Press or (Call) to make a call with your phone number hidden.

Switching to Speaker Phone

During a call, → **Yes**

- To cancel Speaker Phone, press during a call.

Talking in Small Voice

During a call, → **Whisper on** or **Whisper off**

- With **whisper on**, the volume of sent sound is raised on the other party's side.

Switching Headset/Phone

During a call, → **Switch to headset**

- Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use.

Setting Mute

During a call, → **Mute** → Press and check/uncheck **Voice** → (OK)

Making New Call during a Call

During a call, → **New call** → Enter a phone number → (Call)

- To search from phonebook, during a call → Select **New call**, then press (Phonebook).
- Available only when Conference Call is used.

Searching Phonebook during Call

During a call, → **Phonebook** → (P.2-17 Searching Phonebook)

Saving the Other Party's Phone Number to Phonebook

During a call, → **Add to Phonebook**

To save a new entry

New → Enter each item → (Save)




To update an entry

Update → Search the phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → Enter each item → (Save)

Viewing Call Log during a Call

During a call,  → *Call log*

Creating New Message during Call

During a call,  → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )

Sending Push Tones

During a call,  → *Send DTMF* → Enter using a keypad →  (Send)






- To search from the phonebook, select *Send DTMF* and press  (Search).

Ending Call by Menu Operation





During a call,  → *End call*

Call Logs

Sending Message from Call Log Records

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight a record to address to →  → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )




Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Phonebook

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight a record to save →  → *Add to Phonebook* → (P.2-16 Saving Phonebook from Call Log Records )

Saving Call Log Record Numbers to Black List

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight a record to add to the black list →  → *Add to black list* → *Yes*




Viewing Phonebook Entry Details via Call Log

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight a record to check →  → *View phonebook details*

Adding International Code and Country Number to Call Log Record Numbers

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight a record to make an international call to →  → *International call* → Select country/Select *Enter Code* and enter a country number → *Japan* or *Abroad* → Check the phone number →  or  (Call)

Showing Caller ID when Calling Call Log Record

 (Received calls) or  (Dialed calls) → Highlight a record to make a call to with your phone number shown/hidden →  → *Hide/Show my ID*

■ To follow *Show my number* setting

None →  or  (Call)

■ To show a phone number


Show my ID →  or  (Call)

■ To hide a phone number


Hide my ID →  or  (Call)

Conference Call

Ending Selected Call

During a conference call, highlight a party to end a call →  (Group call) → ***End this call***

Putting All Calls on Hold

During a conference call,  (Group call) → ***Hold all calls***

- To cancel on-hold,  (Group call) → Select ***Call to all***.

Messaging



Messaging Services	4-2
S! Mail & SMS	4-2
Messaging Basics	4-3
Managing Messages with Folders	4-3
Customizing Mail Address	4-4
Creating/Sending Messages	4-4
S! Mail	4-4
SMS	4-7
Using Templates	4-8
Incoming Messages	4-8
Viewing New Messages	4-9
Retrieving Messages Manually	4-10
Viewing from Message List	4-10
Replying to Received Messages	4-12
Forwarding Received Messages	4-12
Using Messages	4-13
Using Message Information	4-13
Locking/Unlocking Messages	4-14
Deleting Messages or Templates	4-15
Saving Attached Files to Data Folder	4-16
Managing Mail Folders	4-16
Creating Folders	4-16
Moving Messages	4-16
Sorting Messages	4-17
Advanced Settings	
Sending S! Mail	4-17
Sending SMS	4-21
Received Messages	4-23
Using/Managing Messages	4-23
Folder Management	4-28

Messaging Services

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS services.
Use Graphic Mail with S! Mail.
Learn how to use and manage messages below.

S! Mail & SMS

Use S! Mail to Exchange long text messages with SoftBank and other e-mail compatible handsets, PCs and other mobile devices.
Enjoy Graphic Mail and multimedia messaging.

Note

S! Mail requires separate subscription.

Use SMS to exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets.

		S! Mail ¹	SMS
Entry Items	Address	○	○
	Subject	○	×
	Attachment	○	×
	Text	○	○
Character Limit	Up to 15,000 double-byte 30,000 single-byte characters (30 KB) ²	Up to 70 single-/double-byte characters, or up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric ³	
Recipient	SoftBank handsets, other e-mail compatible handsets, PCs	SoftBank handsets	
Contents	Long text message, Image, Sound, Graphic Mail, and Feeling Mail ⁴	Short text message	

1 Send up to 300 KB including address, subject, message text, attachments, etc. (same limit applies to replies and forwarded S! Mail messages).

2 Entry limit varies by attachment size etc.

3 When **Char-code** is set to **GSM7 bit** (☎P.12-5)

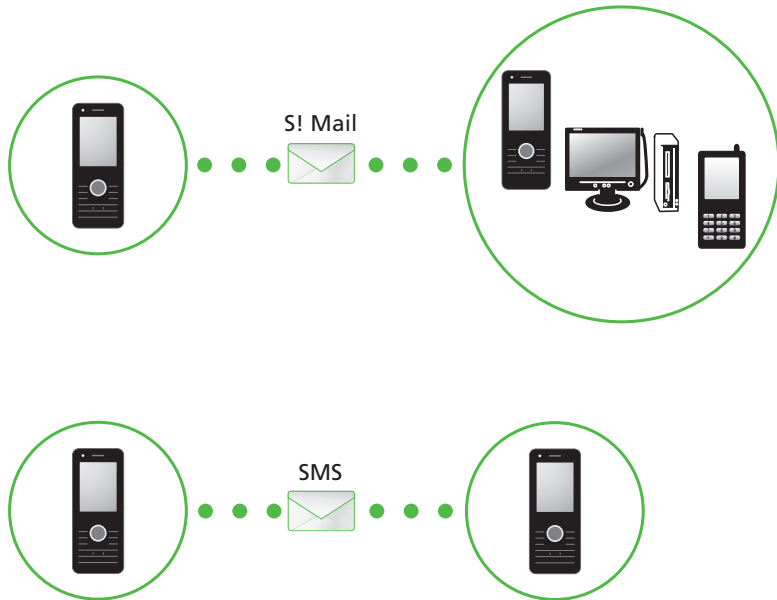
4 Exchange Feeling Mail only with compatible handsets

Note

- Messages created on handset may not appear on other party's handset correctly.
- Received Hangul messages are viewable. Use only SMS to create new messages in Hangul.
- Replying to/forwarding received S! Mail automatically deletes Hangul characters.
- Hangul may be deleted from sent SMS or appear as spaces on other party's handset.

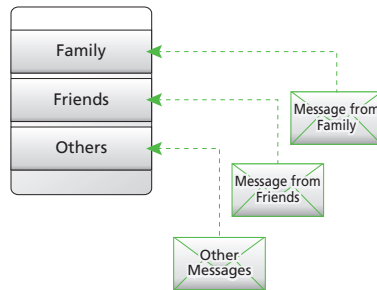
Messaging Basics

See the flow of messaging transmissions below:





Managing Messages with Folders

Automatically sort messages to specified folders (P.4-17).



Customizing Mail Address

Change the alphanumerics appearing before @ of handset Mail Address (Account Name). Default Account Name consists of random alphanumerics. For details, access SoftBank Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

- 1  → **Settings** → **Custom mail address**
- 2 **Follow onscreen instructions**
 - After Mail Address is changed, SoftBank sends a confirmation.
- 3  → **Received msg.** → **Select a folder** → **Select a message from Information** → **Yes**

Advanced

Settings

- Customize or change handset mail address ([P.12-2](#))

Creating/Sending Messages


Created or sent messages will be saved in folders based on their status. For example, sent messages are saved in Sent msg. Incomplete messages are saved in Drafts. Described below is the method to create/send S! Mail and SMS, create Graphic mail, and attach files.

S! Mail

Example: Sending S! Mail to a Phonebook entry


Note







- Received S! Mail in Hangul is viewable. However, Hangul is deleted from message when replying or forwarding in S! Mail (Hangul cannot be used to create S! Mail).

- 1  → **Create new**



Text Entry Window

- 2 **Select Recipient field**
- 3 **From phonebook** → **Search Phonebook and select an entry** ([P.2-17 Searching Phonebook](#))
- 4 **Select number or address**
- 5 **Select Subject field** → **Enter subject**
- 6 **Select Attach field when attaching files to mail** ([P.4-5](#))
- 7 **Select Enter text field** → **Enter text**
- 8  (Send)

- Send S! Mail from Sent Messages folder, **Enter number**, **Enter address** or **From group** (P.4-17).
- Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds in Standby to open S! Mail creation window.
- Enter SoftBank handset numbers or mail addresses in Recipient field. Add up to 20 recipients.
- If ,  or  is pressed with address, subject or text entered, or a file attached, an exit confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to exit. Alternatively, if  or  is pressed, select **Save** to save to Drafts before exiting.
- Sent messages are saved in **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** If **Auto delete** (P.12-2) is **On (Auto delete)** and memory is full, sent messages are automatically deleted, oldest first (unless protected), to make room for new ones. If **Unsent msg.** is full or messages cannot be deleted, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.
- During message creation, message size appears in the upper-right of Create Message window.

Attaching Files

Attach media files directly, or Phonebook/Calendar entries, Tasks or Account Details as vCard or vCalendar files.

Send up to 300 KB including address, subject and text.

Attach up to 20 files per S! Mail message.

1 → Create new → Select Attach field


2 Attach file

■ Data Folder files


Data Folder → Select a file location → Select a file

- When the attached image size exceeds 300 KB, the image resizing window appears. Select a size.

■ Phonebook entries (vCard)

Phonebook details → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) →  (Add)

■ Calendar/Task entries (vCalendar)

Calendar item → **Schedule** or **Task** using  → Select an entry to attach

■ Account details (vCard)

Account details →  (Add)

- To add files, select Attach field → Select **Add file**, and repeat Step 2.

- When files are attached, file type indicators and file names appear in Attached file list.



: Image



: Sound



: Video



: vCalendar



: vCard



: Other

Note

- Some attachments may be lost depending on recipient handset status. For supported file types, access SoftBank Mobile Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- When attaching a video, select a file recorded in **Video mode** (P.6-9). If file is incompatible, a warning message appears.
- When attaching Account details, Hobby cannot be attached.

Editing Text to Graphic Mail

Example:

- Changing font size, background color
- Inserting image, pictograms in Data Folder
- Scrolling characters left and right
- For other items, see "Sending S! Mail" (P.4-17).

1  → **Create new** → **Select Enter text field**


2  → **Graphic Mail**



Graphic Mail
Entry Window

3 **Font size** → **Large, Standard or Small** → **Enter message text**


- To continue, press  (Add art).


4  (Add art) → **Background color**







5 **Select a background color**

6  (Add art) → **Image**

7 **Pictures** → **Select a file**




- When Memory Card is inserted, files can be selected from **Digital camera** folder.
- To shoot and insert an image, select **Take photo**.
- When Memory Card is inserted, select **Picture**, press , then select **Memory card** to select a file from Memory Card.

8  (Add art) → **My Pict.** → **Select a pictogram**

9  (Add art) →  (Select area) → **Use  to move the cursor to the starting point of decoration and press  (Start) → Use  to select an area to decorate →  (End)**

10 **Effect** → **Scrolling**

11 **Right to left or Swing**

12  (Close) →  (Close) →  (OK)

- In Graphic Mail entry window, select **Undo** to undo most recent change.

- In Graphic Mail entry window, select **Cancel** → **Yes** to cancel Graphic Mail and return message text only.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (P.4-17)

- Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc
- Deleting Address
- Deleting Attached File
- Changing Font Size
- Using Templates
- Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text
- Setting Prediction Entry or Learning Function
- Inserting Information into S! Mail
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Entering Address Quickly
- Sending Feeling Mail
- Resetting Feeling Setting
- Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts
- Saving Graphic Mail as Template
- Using Template to Create S! Mail
- Deleting All Text
- Setting Scroll Unit in S! Mail Creation Window
- Jumping to Top/Bottom of Text
- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

- Setting Message Actions
- Inserting BGM/Line
- Changing Entered Text Color, Size, or Effect
- Viewing Graphic Mail

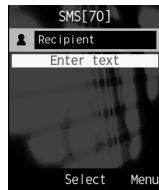
Settings

- Change font size (☞ P.12-2)
- Change scroll unit (☞ P.12-2)
- Request or cancel Delivery Report (☞ P.12-2)
- Insert or hide Signature (☞ P.12-2)
- Edit Signature (☞ P.12-2)
- Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full (☞ P.12-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (☞ P.12-3)
- Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden) (☞ P.12-3)
- Set message sending priority (☞ P.12-4)
- Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry (☞ P.12-4)
- Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center (☞ P.12-4)
- Select reply setting (☞ P.12-4)
- Set "reply to" address (☞ P.12-4)


SMS

Example: Sending SMS to a Phonebook entry.

1  → *Create new SMS*



Text Entry Window

- 2** Select Recipient field
- 3** *From phonebook* → Search Phonebook and select a recipient (☞ P.2-17 Searching Phonebook **2**)
- 4** Select a phone number
- 5** Select Enter text field → Enter text
- 6**  (Send)

- Enter SoftBank handset numbers in Recipient field. Add up to 20 Recipients.
- When entered text exceeds entry limit (☞ P.4-2), S! Mail conversion confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to switch to S! Mail. When Hangul text is included, a confirmation to delete Hangul text appears. Choose **Yes** to delete Hangul text and switch to S! Mail.
- Sent messages are saved in **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.**. If **Auto delete** (☞ P.12-2) is **On** (**Auto delete**) and memory is full, sent messages are automatically deleted, oldest first (unless protected), to make room for new ones. If **Unsent msg.** is full or messages cannot be deleted, memory full confirmation appears. Delete items and then send message.

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞ P.4-21)

- Deleting Recipient
- Changing Font Size
- Using Templates
- Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text
- Setting Prediction Entry or Learning Function
- Inserting Information into SMS
- Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)
- Entering Address Quickly
- Saving SMS to Drafts
- Converting SMS to S! Mail
- Deleting All Text

- Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

Settings

- Change font size (☞ P.12-2)
- Change scroll unit (☞ P.12-2)
- Request or cancel Delivery Report (☞ P.12-2)
- Insert or hide Signature (☞ P.12-2)
- Edit Signature (☞ P.12-2)
- Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full (☞ P.12-2)
- Show or hide transmission progress bar (☞ P.12-3)
- Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden) (☞ P.12-3)
- Select reply setting (☞ P.12-4)
- Set "reply to" address (☞ P.12-4)
- Set Mail Service Center message expiry time (☞ P.12-5)
- Set Message Center Number (☞ P.12-5)
- Edit Message Center Number (☞ P.12-5)
- Change character code (☞ P.12-5)

Using Templates


1  → *Templates*

2 **Select a template**

■ **To use a Graphic Mail template to create or send S! Mail**

Graphic Mail templates → Select a Graphic Mail template →  (Mail) → (☞ P.4-4 S! Mail ②)

■ **To use fixed phrases to send SMS**

Text templates → Highlight a fixed phrase to use →  → *Send* → (☞ P.4-7 SMS ②)

Incoming Messages

There are two major ways to receive S!Mail.

Auto download: Mail Service Center sends complete S! Mail messages automatically.

Manual retrieval: Mail Service Center sends S! Mail Notice; retrieve complete message.

Received messages are saved to **Received msg.**

Learn how to receive and respond to messages below.

Viewing New Messages

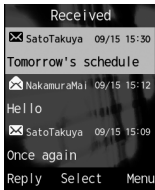
When a message is received, notice appears in Standby. Number of messages, sender and received date/time appear.

- For S! Mail, an entire message including attachments is automatically received. Note that applicable charges will apply based on your contract conditions. You can also set not to receive an entire message automatically (ⓈP.4-10).



Information Window
(Received Messages)

1 In the notification window, (View) → Select a folder



Message List
Window

2 Select a new message



Message Window
(S! Mail)

- If 3D Pictograms confirmation appears, select *Always, Only unread* or *Disable*.

• 3D Pictograms

When viewing new/unread messages, message text appears in 3D animation.

If **3D Pictogram** (ⓈP.12-3) is set to other than **Disable**, 3D animation appears. After animation stops or (Stop) is pressed, Message window appears. Use Menu options in Message window.

- When a file is attached, a file name and thumbnail appear at the bottom of the message.
- If messages are received when not in Standby, sender numbers or mail addresses (names if saved in Phonebook), etc. scroll across Display top. Afterward (S) appears (ⓈP.1-4, P.12-3).
- When a Delivery Report arrives, (S) flashes and disappears. In Standby, a notification appears.
- Received messages are saved in **Received msg.** If **Auto delete** (ⓈP.12-2) is **On (Auto delete)** and memory is full, received messages are automatically deleted, oldest first (unless protected), to make room for new ones. If messages cannot be deleted, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.

Note

- Outside Japan, selecting **Auto download** in **Receiving options** of **Roaming auto settings** may incur very high Packet Communications charges. Auto download enabled (ⓈP.12-4) by default; complete S! Mail messages download automatically.

Retrieving Messages Manually

When **Receiving options** (P.12-4) is set to **Manual retrieval**, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to handset as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

1  → **Received msg.**


2 Select a folder → Select a notification




3 **Retrieve mail**

• Message List Indicators


Unread Message Notification

 : Priority high


 : Priority standard

 : Priority low

Read Message Notification


 : Priority high

 : Priority standard

 : Priority low

Viewing from Message List

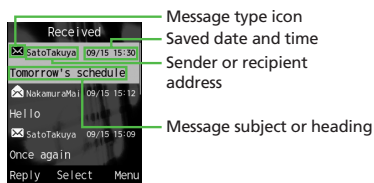
View messages from the message list window in **Received msg.**, **Drafts**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.**

1  → **Received msg.**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select a folder as required



Mail Folder list window (Received messages)

2 Select a message



Message List Window (Received messages)

- Secret folders are hidden when *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*. To show secret folders, → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Select a folder.
- In Message window, press or for next/previous message.
- "No message" appears when there is no message in *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.*.

Message List

These indicators appear in message lists.

•Received Message Indicators

Unread S! Mail

- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low
- : Media File Inserted

Read S! Mail

- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low
- : Media File Inserted

Unread Message Notification

- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low

Read Message Notification

- : Priority high
- : Priority standard
- : Priority low

Unread SMS

- : Saved to Phone
- : USIM Card SMS

Read SMS

- : Saved to Phone
- : USIM Card SMS

Receiving

- : S! Mail

•Draft Message Indicators

S! Mail

- : S! Mail
- : Media File Inserted

SMS

- : SMS

•Unsent Message Indicators

S! Mail

- : S! Mail
- : Media File Inserted
- : Sending

SMS


- : SMS
- : USIM Card SMS

•Sent Message Indicators



S! Mail

- : S! Mail
- : Media File Inserted

SMS

: SMS: USIM Card SMS


Delivery Report

 : Unread S! Mail: Unread SMS



- If **Secret mode** is active, only phone number or address appears for messages to/from secret entries.

Replying to Received Messages

- 1  → *Received msg.*
- 2 Select a folder → Select a message to replay
- 3  → *Reply* → *S! Mail, S! Mail (History), SMS or SMS (History)*
 - To quote the message text of the received message, select *S! Mail (History)* or *SMS (History)*
- 4 Create a message (⊕P.4-4 S! Mail 5)

- *Re:* is automatically added to the subject of reply S! Mail.
- Press  (Reply) in Step 3 to display the S! Mail creation window or SMS creation window with message text of received message quoted.

Forwarding Received Messages

- 1  → *Received msg.* → Select a folder
- 2 Highlight a message to forward →  → *Forward*
- 3 Create a message (⊕P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

- *Fw:* appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.
- To forward received SMS, select S! Mail or SMS.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (ⓘ P.4-23)

- Calling Sender
- Replying to All
- Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail
- Deleting Server Mail via Notification
- Setting Display Size of Attached Image

 **Settings**

- Change font size (ⓘ P.12-2)
- Change scroll unit (ⓘ P.12-2)
- Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full (ⓘ P.12-2)

- Set received message notice content or hide notice (☞ P.12-3)
- Select secret folder message notice setting (☞ P.12-3)
- Change message list view (☞ P.12-3)
- Change received message view (☞ P.12-3)
- Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting (☞ P.12-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram color settings (☞ P.12-3)
- Select 3D Pictogram display speed (☞ P.12-3)
- Set S! Mail receiving options (☞ P.12-4)
- Set S! Mail receiving options during roaming (☞ P.12-4)
- Show or hide emotion in received Feeling Mail Notification (☞ P.12-4)
- Link External Light to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.12-4)
- Link External Light color to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.12-4)
- Link Vibration to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.12-4)
- Set whether to sound handset when Feeling Mail arrives (☞ P.12-5)
- Linking Ringtone to incoming Feeling Mail (☞ P.12-5)
- Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration (☞ P.12-5)
- Set attached image appearance (☞ P.12-5)
- Set attached image auto playback (☞ P.12-5)
- Set attached sound auto playback (☞ P.12-5)

Using Messages


Organize messages by type in five default folders.

Folder	Message Type
Received msg.	Received Mail are Saved
Drafts	Incomplete Mail are Saved
Templates	Templates for Graphic Mail or fixed phrases for SMS are Saved
Sent msg.	Sent Mail are Saved
Unsent msg.	Failed/Cancelled/Outgoing Mail are Saved

Using Message Information

In a Message or Notification, highlight sender, recipient, phone number or mail address to save it to Phonebook, place a call, send mail, or open or bookmark a website.

Saving to Phonebook

- 1  → *Received msg.* → **Select a folder → Select a message → Select phone number, E-mail address, or URL → Add to phonebook**

2 Save a number to Phonebook




■ To save as a new entry

New → (☞ P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry 2)

■ To update existing entry


Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞ P.2-17) → Save a number to Phonebook (☞ P.2-15)

Saving to Bookmark

- 1  → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message → Select URL → *Add to bookmark*
- 2  (Select) → Enter a title →  (Save)

Using Page Links

Use sender's address, or a phone number, address, or URL embedded in message text.







- 1  → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message
- 2 Use linked information
 - **To make a Voice Call**
Select a phone number → *Voice call*
 - **To edit a number before call**
Select a phone number → *Edit before call*
 - **To send a message**
Select a phone number or an E-mail address → *Create message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* (📞P.4-4 S! Mail 5, P.4-7 SMS 5)
 - **To access the Internet**
Select URL → *Go to URL* → *Yes*

● To message to a phone number, select S! Mail or SMS then create message.

Locking/Unlocking Messages

Select and protect one or all messages in a folder. When deleting a protected message, a confirmation appears.


Cancel protection as needed.

- 1  → *Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg. or Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required
- 2 Lock/Unlock a message
 - **To lock/unlock an item**
Highlight a message to lock or unlock →  → *Lock* or *Unlock* → *Selected*
 - **To lock/unlock multiple items**
 → *Lock* or *Unlock* → *Multiple*
→ Check a message to lock or unlock →  (Lock) or  (Unlock)
 - **To lock/unlock all items**
 → *Lock* or *Unlock* → *All*

Deleting Messages or Templates

Deleting Messages

Delete specified or all messages in Mailbox.



- 1  → *Received msg., Drafts, Sent msg. or Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required

- 2 Delete a message



■ **To delete an item**

Highlight a message to delete →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ **To delete multiple items**

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check messages to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ **To delete all messages in the selected folder**

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Deleting Templates

Delete specified templates or all saved templates.



- 1  → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates or Text templates*

- 2 Delete a template



■ **To delete an item**

Highlight a Graphic Mail template or fixed phrase to delete →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ **To delete multiple items**

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check templates or fixed phrases to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ **To delete all items**

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*




Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.4-23


- Editing & Sending Sent/Unsent Messages
- Saving Received/Sent Graphic Mail as Template
- Showing 3D Pictograms
- Adding Sender to Phonebook
- Viewing Sender and Recipient
- Copying Message Content
- Deleting Message


- Viewing Mail Details
- Setting Font Size
- Setting Character Code
- Changing Scroll Unit
- Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message
- Switching Message List View
- Sorting Messages
- Changing Messages to Read/Unread
- Moving SMS Message to handset/USIM Card
- Sending Unsent Messages after Editing
- Resending Unsent Messages
- Sending Saved Graphic Mail Template via S! Mail
- Moving Graphic Mail template
- Copying Graphic Mail template
- Sending Graphic Mail template
- Sorting Graphic Mail Template
- Managing Graphic Mail Template
- Setting Secret to Graphic Mail Templates Folder
- Forwarding Server Mail
- Deleting Mail List Messages

Settings

- Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full ( P.12-2)
- Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full ( P.12-2)
- Change message list view ( P.12-3)


Saving Attached Files to Data Folder

1  → *Received msg. or Sent msg.* → **Select folder** → **Select message**



2  → *Save items*

3 **Save a file**


■ **To save an item**



Highlight file to save →  (Select)

■ **To save multiple items**

 → *Save multiple* → Check files to save →  (Save)

■ **To save all items**

 → *Save All*


- If file name already exists warning appears, press  (OK) → Edit file name →  (Save).

Managing Mail Folders

Create folders in *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* folder; set rules for folders to automatically sort messages. Set Security for personal folders.

Received and *Sent folder* cannot be deleted; setting cannot be changed.

Creating Folders


1  → *Received msg. or Sent msg.*

2  → *Add new folder*

3 **Edit folder name**


- New folder appears at bottom of list.
- No message appear if folder names overlap.

Moving Messages

1  → *Received msg. or Sent msg.* → **Select a folder**

2 **Move a message**


■ **To move an item**

Highlight a message to move →  → *Move to folder* → *Selected*

■ **To move multiple items**

 → *Move to folder* → *Multiple* → Check messages to move →  (Move)

■ **To move all items**



 → *Move to folder* → *All*

3 **Select a destination folder**

- Received messages are saved to *Received* folder, and sent messages are saved to *Sent folder*. To move back to the original folder after moving messages to another folder, select *Received* or *Sent folder* in Step 3.

Sorting Messages

Sort and save the sent/received messages automatically by phone number, mail address, etc. to the specified folders. Sort messages by S! Mail subject or SMS text. Set up to 20 rules per folder.

- 1  → *Received msg. or Sent msg.*
- 2 Highlight a folder to set a sorting rule →  → *Auto sort*
- 3 Set sorting rule

To select phone number/E-mail address from Phonebook

Select rule field → *Sender or Recipient* → *From phonebook* → Search the phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → Select a phone number or mail address

To enter phone number/E-mail address directly

Select rule field → *Sender or Recipient* → *Direct input* → Enter a phone number or mail address

To select phone number/E-mail address from Group in Phonebook

Select rule field → *Sender or Recipient* → *From group* → Select a group

- Groups saved on USIM Card cannot be set as a rule.

To select a rule from text

Select rule field → *Subject* → Enter text to set for a sorting rule



4 (OK)

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.4-28

- Changing Folder Name
- Deleting Folders
- Setting Secret to Folder
- Changing Sorting Rules
- Deleting Sorting Rules
- Viewing Message or Folder Details

Settings

- Change received message view ( P.12-3)
- Change sent message view ( P.12-3)

Advanced Settings

Sending S! Mail

Entering Address from Other Than Phonebook

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field

To enter from logs

Select a displayed log

To enter phone number directly


Enter number → Enter phone number

To enter E-mail address directly

Enter address → Enter mail address

To select phone number from Group in Phonebook


From group → Select group

- If the number of items stored in a group exceeds 21, check recipients to send to → Press  (Add).
- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in an entry, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or a mail address.


Adding Address

In S! Mail creation window with address entered, select Recipient field → *Add recipients*


To enter from logs

Select a displayed log →  (Done)


To select from Phonebook

From phonebook → Search Phonebook and select entry (P.2-17) → Select phone number or E-mail address →  (Done)

To enter phone number directly


Enter number → Enter a phone number →  (Done)

To enter mail address directly



Enter address → Enter a mail address →  (Done)

To select phone number from Group in Phonebook

From group → Select a group →  (Done)

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are saved in an entry, Selection window for address may appear. Select a phone number or a mail address.
- The number of addresses appears next to Recipient field  in S! Mail creation window.



Changing Address Type to To, Cc, or Bcc

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field → Highlight an address to change →  → *Change to To, Change to Cc* or *Change to Bcc* →  (Done)



Deleting Address

In S! Mail creation window, select Recipient field


To delete an item

Highlight an address to delete →  → *Remove* → *Selected* →  (Done)

To delete all items

 → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes* →  (Done)



Viewing Attached File

In S! Mail creation window, select Attach field → Highlight a file to view →  (Open)



Deleting Attached File

In S! Mail creation window, select Attach field

To delete an item

Highlight a file to delete →  → *Remove* → *Selected* →  (Done)

To delete all items

 → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes* →  (Done)

Changing Font Size

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Font size* → Select an item

Using Templates

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Text templates* → Select a fixed phrase

Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Cursor position* → Select an item

Setting Prediction Entry or Learning Function

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Conversion*

To activate or cancel the prediction entry function

Prediction On or *Prediction Off*

To activate or cancel the learning function

Learning On or *Learning Off*

To reset logs

Reset learning → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

To reset logs of pictograms or symbols

Clear history

Inserting Information into S! Mail


While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Advanced*

■ **To insert a signature**
Signature

■ **To insert information in Phonebook**
Phonebook → Search the phonebook and select an entry (ⓂP.2-17) → Select an item

■ **To insert Account Details information**
Account details → Select an item


Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Add to dictionary* → (ⓂP.2-12 Saving to User's Dictionary ②)

Entering Address Quickly

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Quick address list* → Select an item

Sending Feeling Mail

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Feeling Setting* → Select a feeling → Select a pictogram for the feeling

Resetting Feeling Setting

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Reset feeling*

Saving S! Mail Being Created to Drafts

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Save to Drafts*

- Only messages with recipient, subject, or text entered, or file attached can be saved.

Saving Graphic Mail as Template

While creating S! Mail message text,  → *Save as Graphic Mail template* → Enter a file name


- Available only when text is decorated (ⓂP.4-6).

Using Template to Create S! Mail


In S! Mail creation window,  → *Launch Graphic Mail template* → Select a template

- If you are already using template, you are prompted to discard the modification so far. Choose *Yes* to discard it and invoke a new template.


Deleting All Text

Highlight Enter text field in the S! Mail creation window →  → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Setting Scroll Unit in S! Mail Creation Window

Highlight Enter text field in the S! Mail creation window →  → *Scroll unit* → Select an item


Jumping to Top/Bottom of Text

In S! Mail creation window, highlight Enter text field →  → *Scroll jump* → Select an item

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Show 3D Pictograms*

Setting Message Actions

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Action settings*

■ **To set whether to automatically delete a message when other party reads the message**
Set auto delete → Select an item

■ **To request other party to reply**
Reply request → *On/Off* → *On* → Enter a message requesting a reply

- When *On* is set, select *Edit Message* from *Reply Request* to edit a message.

■ **To prevent a message from being forwarded**
Forward NG → *On/Off* → *On* → Enter a message indicating no forwarding allowed


- When *On* is set, select *Edit Message* from *Forward NG* to edit a message.

■ To prevent a message from being deleted

Delete NG → *On/Off* → *On* → Enter a message indicating no deletion allowed



- When *On* is set, select *Edit Message* from *Delete NG* to edit a message.

■ To prevent a message from being read before answering (one answer to one question) questions correctly

Quiz → *On/Off* → *Open question* → Select Question field → Enter a question → Select Answer field → Enter an answer → Select Message (Correct) field → Enter a message for the correct answer → Select Message (Incorrect) field → Enter a message for the incorrect answer →  (Done)

- Select *Edit question* from *Quiz* to edit a question again.

■ To prevent a message from being read before answering (multiple choice) questions correctly

Quiz → *On/Off* → *Multiple choice question* → Select Question field → Enter a question → Highlight Answer field → Use  to select the correct number → Select Example1 to 4 field and enter alternatives → Select Message (Correct) field → Enter a message for the correct answer → Select Message (Incorrect) field → Enter a message for the incorrect answer →  (Done)

- Select *Edit question* from *Quiz* to edit a question again.
- Set *Action settings* to set actions of messages on the recipient side.

Requesting S! Mail Delivery Report

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Delivery report* → Select an item

- Select *On* to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.

Setting Reply Settings


In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Reply settings* → Select an item

- Set a reply destination from "*Reply to*" address (☺P.12-4).

Setting Message Priority

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Priority* → Select an item


Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Expiry time* → Select an item

Setting Delivery Time

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Delivery time* → Select an item

Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding

In S! Mail creation window,  → *Sending options* → *Remote Fwd action* → Select an item

- This function is available only when forwarding Server Mail message (☺P.4-27).




Inserting BGM/Line

In S! Mail creation window, select Enter text field →  → *Graphic Mail* → *Insert*

■ To insert BGM from Data Folder


BGM → *Ring songs · tones* or *Music* → Select a file

■ To record BGM to insert







BGM → *Record sound* →  (Record) →  (Stop) →  → *Add to message*

■ To insert a separator line Line

Canceling Inserted BGM

In Graphic Mail creation window with BGM inserted, select Enter text field →  (Add art) → *Insert* → *Delete BGM*

Changing Entered Text Color, Size, or Effect

In S! Mail creation window with characters entered, select Enter text field →  → **Graphic Mail** →  (Select area) → Use  to move the cursor to the first character to decorate and press  (Start) → Use  to select an area to change →  (End)

■ To change font color

Font color → Select a color

■ To change font size

Font size → Select an item


■ To change effect

Effect → Select an effect → Select an item

■ To cancel these modifications

Undo

Viewing Graphic Mail

While creating Graphic Mail message text,
 → *Preview*

Sending SMS

Specifying Recipient without Phonebook

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field

■ To enter from logs


Select a Log record

■ To enter a phone number directly

Enter number → Enter a phone number

■ To select from Phonebook groups


From group → Select a group

- If group contains more than 21 entries, check recipients to send to → Press  (Add).
- If entry contains multiple phone numbers, recipient selection window appears. Select a phone number.
- When a mail address is set for *Messages in Set default number*, the phonebook entry cannot be set for a recipient.



Adding Recipient

In SMS creation window with address entered, select Recipient field → *Add recipients*


■ To enter from logs

Select a Log record →  (Done)


■ To select from Phonebook


From phonebook → Search and select an entry ( P.2-17) → Select a phone number →  (Done)

■ To enter a phone number directly

Enter number → Enter a phone number →  (Done)

■ To select from Phonebook groups



From group → Select a group →  (Done)

- If entry contains multiple phone numbers, recipient selection window appears. Select a phone number.
- If a mail address is set for *Messages in Set default number*, Phonebook entry cannot be set as recipient.
- The number of recipients appears next to Recipient field  in SMS creation window.



Deleting Recipient

In SMS creation window, select Recipient field


■ To delete an item

Highlight an address to delete →  →
Remove → *Selected* →  (Done)

■ To delete all items

 → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes* →
 (Done)

Changing Font Size

While creating SMS message text,  →
Font size → Select an item

Using Templates

While creating SMS message text,  →
Text templates → Select a fixed phrase

Moving Cursor to Top or End of Text

While creating SMS message text,  →
Cursor position → Select an item

Setting Prediction Entry or Learning Function

While creating SMS message text,  →
Conversion

■ To activate or cancel the prediction entry function

Prediction On or *Prediction Off*

■ To activate or cancel the learning function

Learning On or *Learning Off*


■ To reset logs

Reset learning → Enter Phone Password →
 (OK) → *Yes*

■ To reset logs of pictograms or symbols

Clear history

Inserting Information into SMS

While creating SMS message text,  →
Advanced

■ To insert a signature

Signature


■ To insert information in Phonebook

Phonebook → Search the phonebook and select
 an entry (☎P.2-17) → Select an item


■ To insert Account Details information

Account details → Select an item

Adding Words to Dictionary (Japanese)

While creating SMS message text,  →
Add to dictionary

Entering Address Quickly

While creating SMS message text,  →
Quick address list → Select an item

Saving SMS to Drafts

In SMS creation window,  → *Save to
 Drafts*

- Available only when either recipient or text is entered.

Converting SMS to S! Mail

In SMS creation window,  → *Change to
 S! Mail*

Requesting SMS Delivery Report

In SMS creation window,  → *Sending
 options* → *Delivery report* → Select an item

- Set *On* to receive a Delivery Report when a message is sent from Mail Server to the other party. This option can be set to the message being created.


Setting Mail Server Expiry Time

In SMS creation window,  → *Sending
 options* → *Expiry time* → Select an item

Deleting All Text

In SMS creation window, highlight Enter text
 field →  → *Remove text* → *Yes*

Viewing 3D Pictograms before Sending



In SMS creation window,  → *Show 3D Pictograms*

Received Messages

Retrieving Messages Manually



 → *Retrieve new*

Calling Sender



 → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Highlight a message →  → *Call*

- The sender should be logged as a phone number.



Replying to All

 → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *Reply to all* → Select an item → (P.4-4 S! Mail **5**)



Forwarding Reception Notification or Server Mail

 → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a reception notification to forward →  → *Forward* → Select an item → (P.4-4 S! Mail **2**)

Deleting Server Mail via Notification



 → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a reception notification →  → *Delete* → Select an item → *Yes*

Setting Display Size of Attached Image


 → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *Picture appearance* → Select an item


Using/Managing Messages

Editing & Sending Sent/Unsent Messages



 → *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message →  → *Edit & send* → (P.4-4 S! Mail **2**, P.4-7 SMS **2**)

Viewing Attachment

 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message → Select a file → *Open*



- To save a file to Data Folder before viewing it, select a file in the message window, then select *Save*.
- To save vCard or vCalendar to phonebook, calendar or task before viewing it, select a file in the message window, then select *Register to phonebook* or *Register to Calendar*.
- To save vCard or vCalendar to phonebook, calendar or task after viewing it, press  (Register).
- When a file requiring Content Key is attached, a confirmation appears. To view the file, choose *Yes* and purchase or obtain Content Key.
- When a file which allows play/view only once is attached, a confirmation appears.

Saving Received/Sent Graphic Mail as Template


 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *Save as Graphic Mail template* → Enter a file name

- Available only when text is decorated (ⓉP.4-6).

Showing 3D Pictograms

 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message →  → *Show 3D Pictograms*

Adding Sender to Phonebook

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *Add to phonebook* → Select a phone number or mail address



■ To save as a new entry

New → (ⓉP.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry ②)



■ To update existing entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (ⓉP.2-17) → Enter each item (ⓉP.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry ②)

Viewing Sender and Recipient

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *View mail address*

Copying Message Content

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *Copy*

■ To copy sender or recipient address

Address → Select address to copy



■ To copy subject

Subject (ⓉP.2-19 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)



■ To copy text

Message txt (ⓉP.2-19 Specifying Range to Copy/Cut)


Deleting Message

 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message →  → *Delete* → *Yes*



Viewing Mail Details

 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Highlight a message →  → *Details*



Setting Font Size

 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message →  → *Font size* → Select an item



Setting Character Code

 → *Received msg.* → Select a folder → Select a message →  → *Char-code* → Select an item



Changing Scroll Unit

 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message →  → *Scroll unit* → Select an item

Moving to Top/Bottom of the Message


 → *Received msg.*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required → Select a message →  → *Scroll jump* → Select an item


Switching Message List View

 → *Received msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent msg.* or *Unsent msg.* → Select a folder as required →  → *Message list view* → Select an item

- The view changed from the menu is canceled when closing the message list window.
- Items in *Message list view* vary by selected folder.

Sorting Messages

 → **Received msg.**, **Drafts**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select a folder as required →

 → **Sort by** → Select an item

- The followings are the items that can be sorted.
 - By time (**Time ↓** or **Time ↑**)
 - By sender (**Sender**)
 - By recipients (**Recipients**)
 - By read or unread message (**Read/Unread**)
 - By message type (**Message type**)
 - By subject (**Subject**)
 - By message size (**Size**)
 - By attachment (**Attach**)
 - By priority (**Priority**)
 - By locked/unlocked message (**Lock**)
- When **Message type** is selected, messages are sorted in the order of S! Mail (including reception notification), SMS saved in USIM Card and SMS saved in handset.
- When **Sender** or **Subject** is selected, messages are sorted in the order of single-byte symbol, single-byte number, single-byte alphabet, single-byte Katakana, double-byte symbol, double-byte Hiragana, double-byte Katakana, Kanji, double-byte number and double-byte alphabet. However, when **Subject** is selected, **Untitled** precedes.

Changing Messages to Read/Unread

 → **Received msg.** → Select a folder

■ To change an item to read/unread

Highlight a message to change to read/unread →

 → **Switch to read** or **Switch to unread** → **Selected**

■ To change multiple items to read/unread



Highlight a message to change to read/unread →

 → **Switch to read** or **Switch to unread** → **Multiple** → Check messages to change to read/unread →  (Read/Unread)

■ To change all items to read/unread

 → **Switch to read** or **Switch to unread** → **All**


Moving SMS Message to handset/USIM Card

 → **Received msg.**, **Sent msg.** or **Unsent msg.** → Select a folder as required → Highlight SMS to move →  → **Move to phone** or **Move to USIM**



- Save up to 10 messages to USIM Card. The number of messages that can be saved varies by USIM Card.
- When moving received SMS messages in a personal folder to USIM Card, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to move to USIM Card.

Sending Draft Message

 → **Drafts** → Select a message →  (Send)



- When an address is not entered,  (Send) does not appear.

Viewing Delivery Report





 → **Sent msg.** → Select a folder → Select a message to set **Sent msg.** for →  (Report)

- Use with SMS/S! Mail addressed to phone number.



Resending Unsent Messages

 → **Unsent msg.** → Highlight a message to resend →  (Resend)

Sending Unsent Messages after Editing

 → **Unsent msg.** → Highlight a message to edit →  → **Edit** → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )


Viewing Error Details for Unsent Message

 → **Unsent msg.** → Highlight a message to view →  → **Error details**

Viewing Saved Graphic Mail Templates

 → **Templates** → **Graphic Mail templates** → Select a Graphic Mail template


Editing Saved Graphic Mail Template

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Select a Graphic Mail template →  (Mail)
 → Select Enter text field → Enter message text
 →  (OK) →  → *Save as Graphic Mail template* → Enter a file name


Sending Saved Graphic Mail Template via S! Mail

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Select a Graphic Mail template →  →
Send via message → (📧P.4-4 S! Mail 


Moving Graphic Mail template

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Select a folder as required

■ To move an item


Highlight a Graphic Mail template to move
 →  → *Move* → *Selected* → Select a destination

■ To move multiple items


 → *Move* → *Multiple* → Check Graphic Mail templates to move →  (Move) → Select a destination

■ To move all items

 → *Move* → *All* → Select a destination

- To create a new folder to move the item into the folder,  (Create) → Enter folder name.



Copying Graphic Mail template

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Select a folder as required

■ To copy an item

Highlight a Graphic Mail template to copy →
 → *Copy* → *Selected* → Select a destination



■ To copy multiple items

 → *Copy* → *Multiple* → Check Graphic Mail templates to copy →  (Copy) → Select a destination

■ To copy all items

 → *Copy* → *All* → Select a destination



Sending Graphic Mail template

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Select a folder as required → Highlight a Graphic Mail template to send →  →
Send



■ To send via a message

Via message → (📧P.4-4 S! Mail 



■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check a Graphic Mail template to send →  (Send) → (📧P.11-5 Sending One by One 

Sorting Graphic Mail Template

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 →  → *Sort by* → Select an item

Managing Graphic Mail Template

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Highlight a folder or Graphic Mail template as required →  → *Manage*




■ To change a folder name or template name



Rename → Enter a name

■ To create a folder

Create folder → Enter a folder name

Setting Secret to Graphic Mail Templates Folder

 → *Templates* → *Graphic Mail templates*
 → Highlight a folder →  → *Set secret* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

- Secret folders are hidden when *Secret mode* is set to *Hide*. To show secret folders, press  → *Unlock temporarily* → Enter Phone Password → Press  (OK).

Adding Text to Templates

 → *Templates* → *Text templates*

■ To add the first item



 (Add new) → Enter text

■ To add second or later entries

 → *Add new* → Enter text



- Save up to 70 characters per template.

Editing Text Template

 → *Templates* → *Text templates* → Highlight text to edit →  (Edit) → Edit text

Viewing Server Mail


 → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes*

- To update Mail list after received, press  (Update), or  and select *Retrieve mail list*.

Receiving Mail List Message


 → *Server mail*

■ To receive selected messages


Retrieve mail list → When a confirmation appears, *Yes* → Highlight a message to receive →  (Get).


■ To receive all messages

Retrieve all mails


- Alternatively, select *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes* →  → Select *Retrieve all*.

Forwarding Server Mail


 → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* →

When a confirmation appears, *Yes* → Highlight a message →  → *Remote forward* → Select Recipient field


■ To select an address from logs

Select a displayed log →  (Send)


■ To select an address from Phonebook

From phonebook → Search the phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → Select a phone number or mail address →  (Send)


■ To enter a phone number directly as an address

Enter number → Enter a phone number →  (Send)

■ To enter a mail address directly as an address

Enter address → Enter a phone number →  (Send)



■ To select an address from Group in Phonebook

From group → Select a group → When a window for selecting an address appears, select an address to enter →  (Send)


- To edit a subject or message text, enter an address, select Subject field or Enter text field, then edit it (P.4-4).
- *Fw*: appears before forwarded S! Mail Subject automatically.

- Set whether to delete message from Server after forwarding Server Mail message (P.4-20 Setting whether to Delete Message from Server after Remote Forwarding).


Deleting All Server Mail

 → *Server mail* → *Delete all* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Select an item



Deleting Mail List Messages

 → *Server mail* → *Retrieve mail list* → When a confirmation appears, *Yes*



■ To delete an item

Highlight a message to delete →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*


■ To delete multiple items

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check messages to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all items

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*



Viewing Server Mail Usage

 → *Server mail* → *Server mail memory*

- To update information, press  (Update).

Viewing Memory Status


 → *Memory status*

- **Received msg.**, **Drafts**, **Sent msg.** and **Unsent msg.** memory appears by size.
- To view memory for message items, press  (Count).
- The count of USIM Card SMS appears only in the window in which memory for message items appears.
- To delete viewed memory, press  (Delete) → Choose **Yes** (P.10-13 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Folder Management

Changing Folder Name

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →

Highlight a folder to change →  →

Change name → Enter a name

Deleting Folders


 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →

Highlight a folder to delete →  → **Delete**



→ Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → **Yes**



Setting Secret to Folder

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →

Highlight a folder to set **Set secret** for → 


→ **Set secret** → Enter Phone Password →

 (OK) →  (OK)

- Secret folders are hidden when **Secret mode** is set to **Hide**. To show secret folders, press  → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → Press  (OK).

Changing Sorting Rules

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →

Highlight a folder to change its rule → 

→ **Auto sort** → Highlight the rule field to change →  → **Replace rule** → (P.4-17 Sorting Messages )


Deleting Sorting Rules

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →

Highlight a folder to delete its rule →  →

Auto sort

■ To delete an item

Highlight a rule field to delete → 

Delete → **Selected**

■ To delete all items

 → **Delete** → **All** → **Yes**

Viewing Message or Folder Details

 → *Received msg.* or *Sent msg.* →

Highlight a folder to view its detail information

→  → **Details**

Internet Services

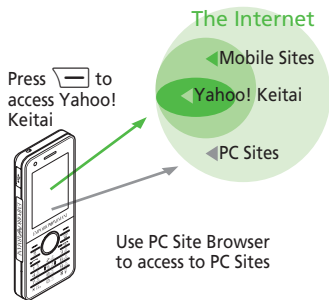


Internet	5-2
Secured Communication (SSL/TLS)	5-2
Opening Saved Pages	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	5-3
Entering URL	5-3
Entering URL from History	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
PC Site Browser Homepage	5-4
Entering URL	5-4
Entering URL from History	5-4
Page Operations	5-5
Selecting Menu	5-5
Entering Text	5-5
Page Zoom	5-5
Multi Page (Tab)	5-6
Buttons and Check Boxes	5-6
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
Saving Bookmarks	5-7
Accessing Bookmarks	5-7
Saving Pages	5-7
Opening Saved Pages	5-8
Advanced Settings	
Yahoo! Keitai	5-8
PC Site Browser	5-10
Page Operations	5-13
Bookmarks	5-14
Saved pages	5-16

Internet

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai or Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

View Web page contents or download media files.



- In this guide, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal and service itself. "PC sites" are sites accessible via PC Site Browser. "Internet" refers to both Internet and Mobile Internet sites.
- A separate subscription is required for Internet services.
- Before using Internet, retrieve Network information.

Note

- Internet connections incur Packet Communication fees.

Secured Communication (SSL/TLS)

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication.

Confirm electronic certificates saved on handset (☞ P.5-10, P.5-12).

Note

- Using SSL/TLS
When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide whether or not to open a page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage, SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co.,Ltd. are not liable for the security of SSL/TLS. No liability is assumed for any damage associated with SSL/TLS use.

Opening Saved Pages

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved in Cache. Cache remains even after a session ends or handset is turned off. When Cache is full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones.

When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest content, reload the page.

- When another USIM Card is inserted, Cache contents are automatically deleted.
- When a page with an expiry date is saved, page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Yahoo! Keitai

Use Yahoo! Keitai to view page contents or download image/music files.

Alternatively, access Yahoo! Keitai from Main menu, Access History, or by entering URL.

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu.



2 Select an item

- When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time, Retrieve NW info window appears after Step 1. Retrieve Network information to open a page.
- To change to a PC Site Browser from Yahoo! Keitai page, press on Yahoo! Keitai page → *Manage content* → *Switch to PC site browser* → *This page* or *Link* → If a warning appears, press (OK) → Choose *Yes* or *No*.

Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not appear (P.5-10).

Entering URL

Enter URL from Yahoo! Keitai Enter URL window to access target page.



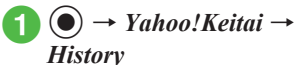
- "http://" is set by default.

2 Enter URL

Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from Yahoo! Keitai are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Access History.

Select site from Access History to access target page.



2 Select site

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.5-8)

- Moving to Next Page
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page
- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Entering URL Quickly

- Entering URL from History
- Sending Access History
- Deleting Access History
- Moving to Main Menu
- Exiting Browser

Settings

- Change page font size (P.12-6)
- Set page scroll unit (P.12-6)
- Show or hide page images (P.12-6)
- Play or mute page sounds (P.12-6)
- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (P.12-6)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (P.12-6)
- Send or hide Referer (P.12-6)
- Select Cookie setting (P.12-6)
- Select Script setting (P.12-6)
- Confirm Root Certificate (P.12-6)
- Set Certificate retention period (P.12-6)
- Initialize Browser (P.12-6)
- Reset settings (P.12-6)


PC Site Browser

Use PC site browser to view page contents or download image/music files from PC sites. Alternatively, access PC Site browser from Main menu, Access History, or by entering URL.




PC Site Browser Homepage

Access PC sites via PC Site Browser Homepage.

1 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Homepage*

- If a warning message appears, press  (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.

2 Select an item

- Activate PC Site Browser,  appears.
- Some sites may not appear correctly.
- To open Yahoo! Keitai from PC Site Browser, press  → *Manage content* → *Switch to Yahoo!Keitai* → *This page* or *Link* → If a warning appears, press  (OK) → Choose *Yes* or *No*.

Note

- When *Send referer* is set to *Not send*, pages may not open (⊕P.5-12).
- Viewing rich content sites may incur high Packet Communication fees.


Entering URL

Enter URL from PC Site Browser Enter URL window to access target page.

1 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Enter URL*

- "http://" is set in URL field by default.

2 Enter a URL

- If a warning appears, press  (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.


Entering URL from History

Accessed URLs from PC site browser are saved in History.

Select site from History to access target page.

1 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *History*

2 Select site

- If a warning appears, press  (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings** (ⓘ P.5-10)

- Moving to Next Page
- Copying Text
- Refreshing Page

- Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page
- Entering URL Quickly
- Entering URL from History
- Sending Access History
- Deleting Access History
- Opening Main Menu
- Changing Page Layout
- Exiting Browser

Settings

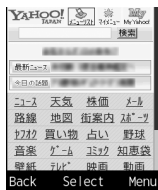
- Change page font size (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Set page scroll unit (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Show or hide page images (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Play or mute page sounds (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Delete cache/Cookie/certificates (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Show or hide Manufacture Number (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Send or hide Referer (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Select Cookie setting (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Select Script setting (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Confirm Root Certificate (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Set Certificate retention period (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Show or hide warning (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Initialize Browser (ⓘ P.12-7)
- Reset settings (ⓘ P.12-7)

Page Operations

Text and pictures shown in page can be zoomed in/out.

Alternatively, select menu to link target page, set function with radio button.

Selecting Menu



Yahoo! Keitai Window

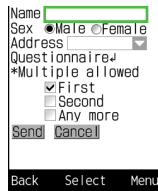
1 Use to scroll up, to scroll down

- Press or to scroll up or down by multiple lines.
- When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use or to scroll to the left or right.

2 Highlight the target menu → (Select)

- Press (Back) or with no previous page, you are prompted to close Internet connection. Choose **Yes** to close it.
- Press (Back) or to return previous page.
- Highlight a link and press (Select); move to target page.
- → Select **Next** to back to the status before pressing (Back) or .

Entering Text



1 Select Text field

2 Enter text

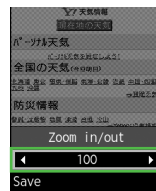
Note

- Text entry and item selection varies by page.

Page Zoom

1 → **Manage content** → **Zoom in/out**

2 Use to select a magnification → (Save)




Multi Page (Tab)

Use tabs at top of Display to open pages.
Open up to three pages simultaneously.






1 Display a page


■ To open in a new tab

Highlight a link to display →  →
Tab menu → *Open new tab*




■ To switch tabs

 → *Tab menu* → *Switch to other tabs* → Use  to switch to a tab to display →  (Select)

■ To close a selected tab

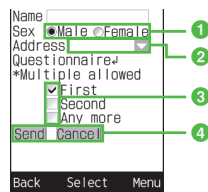
 → *Tab menu* → *Close selected tab*

■ To select and close a tab




 → *Tab menu* → *Close other tabs*
→ Use  to switch to a tab to close →  (Select)

- Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites cannot be open simultaneously.
- Some pages may open in a new tab automatically.
- When multiple tabs are open, some pages may be partially obscured. Close unnecessary tabs.



Buttons and Check Boxes






1 Radio button

Select an item only. Highlight an item with  →  (Select) (Appearing as .


2 Menu field

Open a menu and select an item.
Highlight a menu →  (Select) →
Highlight an item →  (Select)

3 Check box

Select multiple items. Highlight items with  →  (Select) (Appearing as .

4 Command button

Perform operations assigned to a button.
Highlight a command button →  (Select)

Advanced Settings (☞ P.5-13)

Settings


- Change page font size (☞ P.12-6, P.12-7)
- Set page scroll unit (☞ P.12-6, P.12-7)
- Show or hide page images (☞ P.12-6, P.12-7)
- Play or mute page sounds (☞ P.12-6, P.12-7)
- Set text size in Yahoo! Keitai pages (☞ P.12-12)
- Set text size in PC site browser (☞ P.12-12)

Bookmarks & Saved Pages



Save site URLs to Bookmarks. Save page content to Saved Pages. Open pages without establishing an Internet connection.

Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 50 bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser, each.

- 1 Open a page
- 2  → *Bookmarks* → *Save*
- 3 Enter title

Accessing Bookmarks

- 1  → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Bookmark*
 - To access from the bookmark of PC Site Browser,  → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → Select *Bookmark*.
- 2 Select a bookmark


Note

- Internet connections may incur Packet Communication fees.

Saving Pages

Save pages to view without connecting to the Internet.

Save up to 30 Yahoo! Keitai and PC site pages, each.

- 1 Open a page
- 2  → *Saved pages* → *Save*
- 3 Enter title

Opening Saved Pages

1 → Yahoo!Keitai → Saved pages

- To open a saved PC site page, → Yahoo!Keitai → PC site browser → Select *Saved pages*.

2 Select a saved page

Note

- If USIM Card inserted when pages was saved is replaced, saved page will not open.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.5-14

- Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry
- Sending Bookmark URL via message
- Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®
- Changing Bookmark Order
- Saving Bookmark to Data Folder
- Viewing Bookmark Details
- Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Bookmark
- Deleting PC Site Browser Bookmark
- Renaming Saved Pages
- Changing Order of Saved Pages
- Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Saved Pages
- Deleting PC Site Browser Saved Pages

Advanced Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Moving to Next Page

In a page, → *Next*

Copying Text

In a page, → *Copy text*

■ To copy selected text

Use to move cursor to the first character to copy and press (Start) → Use to specify a range → (End)

■ To copy all text in text entry window

(All)

Refreshing Page

In a page, → *Refresh*

Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page

In a page, → *Enter URL* → Enter URL

Entering URL Quickly

In URL entry window, → *Quick address list* → Select an item

Entering URL from History

In URL entry window, → *Enter URL logs* → Select a URL

- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.

Switching Browser

In a page, → *Manage content* → *Switch to PC site browser* → Select an item

- If a warning appears, press (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.
- *Link* can be selected only when a link in a page is selected.

Searching Text

In a page, → *Manage content* → *Search* → Enter a word to search for

- Words that match are highlighted. Press (Prev.) or (Next) to search for the previous or next match. To return to a page, press (Cancel).

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page, → *Manage content* → *Jump to top* or *Jump to bottom*

Sending URL

In a page, → *Manage content* → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS)

Opening Previously Viewed Page

From Yahoo! Keitai

● → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *History* → Select a URL to open

From a page

In a page, ☰ → *Manage content* → *History* → Select a URL to open

- Up to 50 accessed URLs are saved.

Sending Access History

● → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *History* → Select a URL to send → ☰ → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail ②, P.4-7 SMS ②)

- Alternatively, in a page, ☰ → *Manage content* → *History* → Highlight a URL to send → ☰ → *Send URL* → Select *S! Mail* or *SMS*.

Deleting Access History

● → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *History*

To delete an item

Highlight a URL to delete → ☰ → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple items

☰ → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check histories to delete → ☰ (Delete) → *Yes*

To delete all items

☰ → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, press ☰ → *Manage content* → *History* → Highlight a URL to delete → ☰ → Select *Delete*.

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page, ☰ → *Manage content* → *Frame in*

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred to as a "Frame".
- To return to the normal display, ☰ → *Manage content* → Select *Frame out*.

Viewing Page Details

In a page, ☰ → *Manage content* → *Details*

To view Page information

Page information

To view Server certificate

Server Certificate

Moving to Main Menu

In a page, ☰ → *Yahoo!Keitai*

Changing Font Size

In a page, ☰ → *Settings* → *Font size* → Select an item

Changing Character Code

In a page, ☰ → *Settings* → *Encoding* → Select an item

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page, ☰ → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → Select an item

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page, ☰ → *Settings* → *Downloads*

To set image

Display image → Select an item


To set sound

Play sounds → Select an item


Clearing Cache

In a page, ☰ → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Clear cache* → *Yes*


Deleting Cookies

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*


Deleting Certificates

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Manufacture number* → Select an item

Sending/Not Sending Referer Information

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item

- Referer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors in handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select an item

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificate Retention

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item

Initializing Saved Information

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting Yahoo! Keitai Settings

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Exiting Browser

In a page,  → *Exit*

PC Site Browser





Moving to Next Page

In a page,  → *Next*

Copying Text

In a page,  → *Copy text*

■ To copy selected text

Use  to move cursor to the first character to copy and press  (Start) → Use  to select a range →  (End)

■ To copy all text in text entry window

 (All)


Refreshing Page

In a page,  → *Refresh*


Entering URL to Open Another Site/Page

In a page,  → *Enter URL* → Enter a URL

Entering URL Quickly

In URL entry window,  → *Quick address list* → Select an item


Entering URL from History

In URL entry window,  → *EnterURL logs* → Select a URL

- In URL entry window, enter URL from History. Up to 10 URL logs appear, newest first. When limit is reached, the oldest page is deleted automatically.




Switching Browser

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → Select an item

- If a warning appears, press  (OK) and choose *Yes* or *No*.
- *Link* can be selected only when a link in a page is selected.

Searching Text

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Search* → Enter a word to search for

- Words that match are highlighted. Press  (Prev.) or  (Next) to search for the previous or next match. To return to a page, press  (Cancel).

Moving to Top/Bottom of Page

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Jump to top* or *Jump to bottom*

Sending URL

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )

Opening Previously Viewed Page

From PC Site Browser





 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *History* → Select a URL to display



From a page

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *History* → Select a URL to display


- Up to 50 accessed page URLs are saved.

Sending Access History


 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *History* → Select a URL to send →  → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )

- Alternatively, in a page,  → *Manage content* → *History* → Highlight a URL to send →  → *Send URL* → *S! Mail* or *SMS*.

Deleting Access History

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *History*



To delete an item



Highlight a URL to delete →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple items

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check histories to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*


To delete all items

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page, press  → *Manage content* → *History* → Highlight a URL to delete →  → Select *Delete*.

Viewing Only Selected Frame

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Frame in*

- Some pages may be divided into multiple sections. Such a section is referred to as a "Frame".
- To return to the normal display,  → *Manage content* → Select *Frame out*.

Viewing Page Details

In a page,  → *Manage content* → *Details*

To view Page information

Page information


To view Server certificate

Server Certificate

Opening Main Menu

In a page,  → *Homepage*

Changing Font Size

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Font size* → Select an item

Changing Character Code

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Encoding* → Select an item

- If page text appears garbled, changing character encoding may solve the problem.

Changing Scroll Unit

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Scroll unit* → Select an item

Setting Show/Play of Image/Sound

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Downloads*


■ To set image

Display image → Select an item


■ To set sound

Play sounds → Select an item


Clearing Cache

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Clear cache* → *Yes*


Deleting Cookies

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete cookies* → *Yes*


Deleting Certificates

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Memory manager* → *Delete certificates* → *Yes*

Setting Manufacture Number Notification


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Manufacture number* → Select an item

Sending/Not Sending Referrer Information

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Send referer* → Select an item

- Referrer is a link source URL information. It is sent to Web server when accessing websites.

Enabling Cookies


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Cookies* → Select an item

- Select *Confirm* for acceptance confirmation every time before a Cookie is saved.
- Cookie automatically saves identification information of visitors in handset. Cookies contain user information and allow sites to recognize users and track preferences.

Enabling Script


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Script* → Select an item

Checking Root Certificates


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Root certificates* → Select an item

- View electronic certificate preinstalled on handset.

Certificate Retention


In a page,  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Certificate retention* → Select an item

Setting to Show Warning Messages

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Warning messages* → *Activate PC site browser* or *Switch to Yahoo! Keitai* → Select an item

- Always show or hide warning when activating PC Site Browser or switching between Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser or vice versa.

Initializing Saved Information

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Initialized browser* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Initialize browser settings or information such as Bookmarks or Saved pages.

Resetting PC Site Browser

In a page,  → *Settings* → *Reset settings* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

Changing Page Layout

In a page,  → *Small screen* or *PC screen*

Exiting Browser


In a page,  → *Exit*

Page Operations


Saving Phone Number/E-mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address → *Save Number* → *Phone* or *USIM*

■ To save as a new entry

New → (☞P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry )

■ To update entry

Update → Search Phonebook and select entry (☞P.2-17) → Enter each item (☞P.2-15 Saving Phonebook as a new entry )

- Available phone numbers and E-mail addresses appear underlined.

Sending Mail to Number/Mail Address

In a page containing phone number/E-mail address → *Create Message* → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → (☞P.4-4 S! Mail , P.4-7 SMS )

- Available phone numbers and E-mail addresses appear underlined.

Calling Phone Number

In a page containing phone number, select phone number → *Voice Call*

- Available phone numbers appear underlined.


Using URL to Open Another Page

In a page, select URL

- Available URLs appear underlined.

Saving Images or Other Files from Pages

■ To save images on a page

In a page that shows images,  → *Save files* → *Save items* → Select an image to save → *Save* or *Save to Pictograms*

- For Yahoo! Keitai, only when multiple images are there, select an image to save.

■ To save background images


In a page that shows background images,  → *Save files* → *Save BG image* → *Save*


■ To save background sound

In a page that plays background sound,  → *Save files* → *Save items* →  (Save)

- Cannot be saved with PC Site Browser.

■ To save linked files

In a page including links, highlight a file link to save →  (Select) → *Save*

- For Auto Save files, select the link to save files.
- The following operations are available when you highlight a link and press  (Select) or save a file (Available options vary by file type).

Display: Open files

Play: Play files (e.g., media file)

Set as: Save file to Wallpaper or Ringtone

Details: Display detail information of files


Back to browser: Return to page

- If files with same name exist, notification appears, choose *Yes* to save it with a different name. Choose *No* to edit the file name.

Bookmarks




Opening Bookmarked Site

In a page,  → **Bookmarks** → **Open list** → Select a bookmark to display

- To open in a new tab, highlight bookmark →  → Select **Open new tab**.

Editing Bookmark Title or URL




In Yahoo! Keitai

 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **Bookmarks** → Highlight bookmark →  (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL →  (Save)

In PC Site Browser




 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Highlight bookmark →  (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL →  (Save)

In a page




In a page,  → **Bookmarks** → **Open list** → Highlight bookmark →  (Edit) → Select Title field → Edit title → Select URL field → Edit URL →  (Save)

Saving Bookmark by Direct Entry




In Yahoo! Keitai

 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **Bookmarks** →  → **Add bookmark** → Select Title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)

In PC Site Browser



 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** →  → **Add bookmark** → Select Title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)

In a page

In a page,  → **Bookmarks** → **Open list** →  → **Add bookmark** → Select Title field → Enter title → Select URL field → Enter URL →  (Save)

Sending Bookmark URL via message



In Yahoo! Keitai

 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **Bookmarks** → Highlight bookmark →  → **Send** → **Via message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (☎P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

In PC Site Browser




 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** → Highlight bookmark →  → **Send** → **Via message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (☎P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

In a page




In a page,  → **Bookmarks** → **Open list** → Highlight bookmark →  → **Send** → **Via message** → **S! Mail** or **SMS** → (☎P.4-4 S! Mail 2, P.4-7 SMS 2)

Sending Bookmark URL via Bluetooth®





In Yahoo! Keitai

 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **Bookmarks** →  → **Send** → **Via Bluetooth** → Check bookmark →  (Send) → (☎P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)





In PC Site Browser

 → **Yahoo!Keitai** → **PC site browser** → **Bookmarks** →  → **Send** → **Via Bluetooth** → Check bookmark →  (Send) → (☎P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)





In a page

In a page,  → *Bookmarks* → *Open list*
 →  → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check
 bookmark →  (Send) → (P. 11-5 Sending
 One by One )





Changing Bookmark Order**In Yahoo! Keitai**

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Bookmarks* →
 Highlight bookmark →  → *Change order*
 → Use  to move cursor to a destination →
 (Select)



In PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  →
Change order → Use  to move cursor to a
 destination →  (Select)



In a page

In a page,  → *Bookmarks* → *Open list*
 → Highlight bookmark →  → *Change*
order → Use  to move cursor to a destination
 →  (Select)



Saving Bookmark to Data Folder**In Yahoo! Keitai**

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Bookmarks* →
 Highlight bookmark →  → *Save to data*
folder → *Phone* or *Memory card* → *Yes*

In PC Site Browser



 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  →
Save to data folder → *Phone* or *Memory card*
 → *Yes*

In a page

In a page,  → *Bookmarks* → *Open list*
 → Highlight bookmark →  → *Save to*
data folder → *Phone* or *Memory card* → *Yes*

- To save a file to *Memory Card*, insert Memory Card.


Viewing Bookmark Details**In Yahoo! Keitai**

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Bookmarks* →
 Highlight bookmark →  → *Details*

In PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks → Highlight bookmark →  →
Details


In a page

In a page,  → *Bookmarks* → *Open list*
 → Highlight bookmark →  → *Details*



Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Bookmark

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Bookmarks*



To delete an item

Highlight bookmark →  → *Delete* →
Selected → *Yes*

To delete multiple items


 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check
 bookmark →  (Delete) → *Yes*

To delete all items


 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password
 →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page,  → *Bookmarks*
 → *Open list* → Highlight bookmark → 
 → Select *Delete*.



Deleting PC Site Browser Bookmark

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
Bookmarks



To delete an item

Highlight bookmark →  → *Delete* →
Selected → *Yes*

To delete multiple items

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check
 bookmark →  (Delete) → *Yes*

To delete all items

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password
 →  (OK) → *Yes*


- Alternatively, in a page,  → *Bookmarks*
 → *Open list* → Highlight bookmark → 
 → Select *Delete*.

Saved pages

Opening Saved Pages in a Page

In a page,  → *Saved pages* → *Open list*


→ Select a saved page to display

- To open in a new tab, highlight page →  → Select *Open new tab*.


Renaming Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Saved pages* →



Highlight entry →  → *Rename* → Enter a name

In PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* →

Saved pages → Highlight entry →  → *Rename* → Enter a name

In a page

In a page,  → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → *Rename* → Enter a name

Changing Order of Saved Pages

In Yahoo! Keitai


 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Saved pages* →

Highlight entry →  → *Change order* →


Use  to move cursor to a destination →

 (Select)

In PC Site Browser

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* →

Saved pages → Highlight entry →  →


Change order → Use  to move cursor to a destination →

 (Select)

In a page

In a page,  → *Bookmarks* → *Open list*

→ Highlight entry →  → *Change order*


→ Use  to move cursor to a destination →

 (Select)

Deleting Yahoo! Keitai Saved Pages

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *Saved pages*



To delete an item

Highlight entry →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple items


 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entry →  (Delete) → *Yes*

To delete all items


 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page,  → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → Select *Delete*.

Deleting PC Site Browser Saved Pages

 → *Yahoo!Keitai* → *PC site browser* → *Saved pages*



To delete an item

Highlight entry →  → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple items

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check entry →  (Delete) → *Yes*

To delete all items

 → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in a page,  → *Saved pages* → *Open list* → Highlight entry →  → Select *Delete*.

Camera



Mobile Camera	6-2
Mobile Camera Precautions	6-3
Camera	6-3
Using Display as Viewfinder	6-3
Single Shot	6-4
Normal	6-6
Multi Shot	6-6
Photo Combination	6-7
Capturing Still Images with Frame	6-7
Night Shot	6-7
Viewing Captured Pictures (Quick Play)	6-8
Video Camera	6-9
Using Display as Viewfinder	6-9
Recording Video	6-10
Video Mode	6-11
Viewing Recorded Video	6-11
Printing Still Images	6-12
Printing via Bluetooth®	6-12
Advanced Settings	
Capturing Still Images	6-12
Recording Videos	6-14

Mobile Camera

Use handset camera to capture pictures and record movies. Edit pictures and print them via Bluetooth®-compatible printers.

Capturing Pictures & Recording Movie Clips

Select Scene, Multi Shot, etc. (➔P.6-3)

Record up to one hour per clip (➔P.6-9).



6

Camera

Capturing options and corresponding image sizes:

Shooting Mode		Shooting Size
Still Image	Single shot Night shot	3M (2048×1536) 2M (1600×1200) 1.3M (1280×960) VGA (640×480) Standby (320×240)
	Multi shot Photo combination Frame shot	Standby (320×240)
Video	For S! Mail	176×144
	Normal	128×96

Printing pictures

Print pictures via Bluetooth® (➔P.6-12).



Multi Selector Operations

When Camera is activated, Viewfinder appears in Landscape. The operations assigned to vertical scroll keys are set to horizontal scroll keys, and vice versa. Operations are described in Landscape view in this chapter.

Vertical scrolls (horizontal scrolls in Portrait): 

Horizontal scrolls (vertical scrolls in Portrait): 

Mobile Camera Precautions

- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens.
- Avoid camera shake; hold handset steady or put it on a stable place and use Self-timer to prevent objectionable image blur.
- Do not expose handset to devices with static electricity at use of camera.
- Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving handset in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect image color.
- When battery is low, camera may be unavailable.

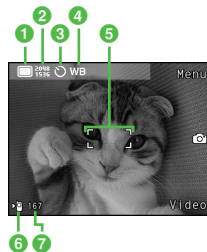
Camera

For taking still pictures, select Shooting mode: **Normal** to shoot single picture, **Multi shot** or **Photo combination** to shoot multi-shot, **Frame shot** to shoot picture with frame, **Night shot** to shoot in sunset or night situation.

Captured images are saved into **Picture**. Insert Memory Card to save images to **Digital camera**.







Using Display as Viewfinder

When Camera is activated, Viewfinder appears in Landscape.








Still Image Viewfinder

1 Shooting mode

-  : Single shot
-  : Multi shot (6 shots)
-  : Multi shot (9 shots)
-  : Photo combination
-  : Frame shot
-  : Night shot

2 Shooting size






-  : 3M (2048×1536) *
-  : 2M (1600×1200) *
-  : 1.3M (1280×960) *
-  : VGA (640×480) *
-  : Standby (320×240)

* Only when the shooting mode is set to **Single shot** or **Night shot**

3 Self-timer



-  : Off
-  : 3 seconds
-  : 5 seconds
-  : 10 seconds

4 White balance

-  : Auto
-  : Daylight
-  : Incandescent
-  : Fluorescent
-  : Cloudy

5 Focus frame

6 Save to

-  : Phone or Ask each time
-  : Memory card or Digital camera

7 Number of remaining shots available

Single Shot



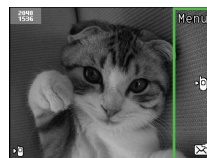
Press  in
Viewfinder



Press  or 



Set shooting methods
with  and 



Confirmation window
for saving/sending/
registering still image
appears only when
Auto Save is set to **Off**.

- Set **Auto Save** (ⓘP.12-9) to **Off** to attach picture to messages after capturing still image (ⓘP.6-13) or set as Wallpaper (ⓘP.6-13).

Shooting Mode

Shooting Mode	Description
Single shot	Capture still image and select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.
Multi shot	Press shutter once to capture six or nine sequential images.
Photo combination	Capture sequential images manually. Select Frame to automatically combine images into a composite image.
Frame shot	Capture still image with frame.
Night shot	Capture still image in the dark scene at dusk or night.

Shortcut Key Operations

Press assigned key to change settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
	Shooting mode	Single shot, Multi shot (6 shots), Multi shot (9 shots), Photo combination, Frame shot, Night shot
	Self-timer	Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
	Quick Play	Phone memory, Memory card, Digital camera
	Switch to <i>Photo/Video</i>	—
	Zoom	—
	Brightness	—


- While using Camera, pressing keys does not make operation tone.

Normal

Captured images are saved to **Picture**. Insert memory Card to save images (**VGA** images and larger) to **Digital camera**.

- Even if Memory Card is inserted and save location is set to **Digital camera** folder, setting is changed to **Memory card** when **Standby** size images are saved.

1 (2+ seconds)

- If **Record video** is activated last time, Video Viewfinder appears. Press  (Photo) to switch to Still Image Viewfinder.
- Alternatively, press  → select **Camera** → **Take photo**.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.6-12).


2 Frame image in Viewfinder

- Press  or  to zoom in/out.
- Press  to brighten or darken an image.

3 or (📷)



Prompt for Saving Still Image



- To redo, press .



4 or (📷)

- Zoom is not available when an image size is set to **3M**.

• Using Auto Focus

When **AF** is set to **On**, Auto focus is available, the subject at the center of the frame will be automatically focused.

Press  halfway to focus on the subject. Then press  all the way to take a picture.

If using , press  to focus and take picture simultaneously.

Multi Shot

1 (2+ seconds)


2 → Highlight → **Multi-shot** → Select number of shooting

- Adjust settings before capturing as required (➔P.6-12).

3 Frame image in Viewfinder

- Press  or  to zoom in/out.
- Press  to brighten or darken an image.

4 or (📷)


- To redo, press .

5 Check images to save →




- When using Multi shot, shooting size is set to **Standby**. Other shooting sizes and Self-timer are not available.

Photo Combination



1  (2+ seconds)

2  → Highlight  →
Photo combination

3 Select a frame →  (OK)
• Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.6-12).


4 Frame image in Viewfinder
→ Apply selected frame and
press  or  (OK)
• Press  or  to zoom in/out.
• Press  to brighten or darken an image.

5 Repeat step 4 to capture
images →  or  (OK)
• To redo, press .

6  or  (OK)

•When using Photo combination, shooting size is set to **Standby**. Other shooting sizes and Self-timer are not available.




Capturing Still Images with Frame

1  (2+ seconds)

2  → Highlight  →
Frame shot

3 Select a frame →  (OK)
• Adjust settings before capturing as required (P.6-12).


4 Frame image in Viewfinder
• Press  or  to zoom in/out.
• Press  to brighten or darken an image.

5  or  (OK)
• To redo, press .

6  or  (OK)




•When using Frame shot, shooting size is set to **Standby**. Other shooting sizes are not available.




Night Shot



1  (2+ seconds)

2  → Highlight  →
Night shot

• Adjust settings before shooting as required (P.6-12).

3 Frame image in Viewfinder
• Press  or  to zoom in/out.
• Press  to brighten or darken an image.


4  or  (OK)
• To redo, press .

5  or  (OK)

•When using Night shot, White Balance cannot be set.




Viewing Captured Pictures (Quick Play)

Use Quick Play to view still images.

1  (2+ seconds)

2  → View still images

with  /  or 

- Press  (Zoom) →  to zoom in/out.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press  and select **Phone**, **Memory card** or **Digital camera** to view images.
- Alternatively, check still images from **Data Folder** (P.10-3).

Advanced

Advanced Settings (P.6-12)

- Switching Shooting Mode
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Self-timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Viewing Captured Pictures
- Viewing Capturing Shortcut Key Assignments
- Entering File Name of Captured Still Image
- Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.
- Enlarging Captured Still Image
- Deleting Images Opened via Quick Play
- Setting Still Image Opened via Quick Play to Wallpaper etc.
- Playing Quick Play Slide Show
- Viewing Image Details via Quick Play

Settings

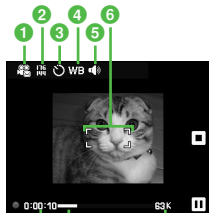
- Show or hide Indicators (P.12-9)
- Set Auto-focus (P.12-9)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (P.12-9)
- Show or hide menu item guidance (P.12-9)
- Select Quality (P.12-9)
- Set ISO (P.12-9)
- Set Exposure metering (P.12-9)
- Set save location (P.12-10)

- Show or hide Guideline (P.12-9)
- Set Shutter sound (P.12-9)

Video Camera

Capture clips easily. Files are saved in 3GP format to **Videos** folder in **Data Folder**. When recording a video to attach or insert into an S! Mail, set Shooting size to **For S! Mail** (P.6-14).

Using Display as Viewfinder



Video Viewer

1 Mode

- : For S! Mail
- : Normal

2 Size

- : 176×144
- : 128×96

3 Self-timer

- : Off : 3 seconds
- : 5 seconds : 10 seconds

4 White balance

- : Auto : Daylight
- : Incandescent : Fluorescent
- : Cloudy

5 Sound

- : Sound On : Sound Off

6 Focus frame

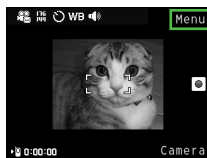
7 Elapsed recording time

8 Progress bar

9 Expected video size/Available recording time







- If **Shooting size** is set to **For S! Mail**, the shooting data size appears; if **Normal**, available recording time appears.

Recording Video

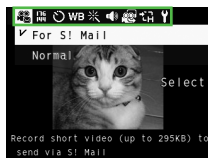


Press  in Viewfinder

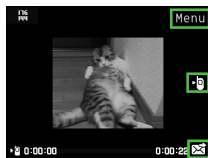


Press  or  () to start recording
Press  or  () to end recording

- Set *Auto Save* (➔P.12-9) to *Off* to attach the file to messages after recording video (➔P.6-14).



Set shooting methods with  /  and 










Confirmation window for saving/sending video appears only when *Auto Save* is *Off*.

Shooting Mode

Shooting Mode	Description
For S! Mail	Record a short video (up to 295 KB) to attach to a message.
Normal	Record a long video (up to 1 hour).

Shortcut Key Operations

Press assigned key to change settings. Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.



Key	Item	Description
	Shooting mode	For S! Mail, Normal
	Self-timer	Off, 3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
	Record sound	Sound On, Sound Off
	Switch to <i>Camera/Video</i>	—
 or 	Zoom	—
	Brightness	—

- While using Video camera, pressing keys does not make operation tone.

Video Mode

Up to 1 hour per clip can be recorded.


1 (2+ seconds)

- If **Take photo** is activated last time, Still Image Viewfinder appears. Press  (Video) to switch to Video Viewfinder.
- Alternatively, press  → select **Camera** → **Record video**.
- Adjust settings before capturing as required (☞P.6-14).

2 Frame image in Viewfinder

- Press  or  to zoom in/out.
- Press  to brighten or darken an image.

3 or (☑)

- To pause while recording, press  (||).
- To resume the recording, press  (●).

4 or (☑)







Prompt for Saving Video

- Recording ends. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends.

5 or (☑)

•Using Auto Focus

When **AF** is set to **On**, Auto Focus is available, the subject at the center of the frame will be automatically focused (the focus is locked while recording).

Press  halfway to focus on the subject. Then press  all the way to start recording. If using , press  to focus and start recording simultaneously.

Viewing Recorded Video

View captured and saved videos by opening **Videos** folder in **Data Folder** from Viewfinder.

1 (2+ seconds)

2 → **Highlight** → **Videos**

3 **Highlight a video with** → (Play)

Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞P.6-14)

- Setting Shooting Mode
- Setting Shooting Size
- Setting Self-timer
- Setting White Balance
- Setting Effect (Color Tone)
- Setting Sound Recording
- Viewing Recording Shortcut Key Assignments
- Viewing Recorded Video before Saving
- Entering File Name of Recorded Video

Settings

- Show or hide Indicators (☞P.12-9)
- Set Auto-focus (☞P.12-9)
- Activate or cancel Auto Save (☞P.12-9)
- Show or hide menu item guidance (☞P.12-9)
- Select Quality (☞P.12-10)
- Set save location (☞P.12-10)

Printing Still Images

Print still images saved on handset by connecting a printer via Bluetooth®.


For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see printer User Manual.

Printing via Bluetooth®

- Print images with Bluetooth® printer.
- Pair Bluetooth® printer beforehand.

1  → **Data Folder** → **Select a file location**

2  → **Print via Bluetooth**

3 **Check files to print** →  (Print)

4 **Select destination device**


- If no device is registered, search and register new device (➔P.11-4).

5 **Set items as required**

■ **To set print size**

Print size → Select an item to set

■ **To set the number of copies**

Number of copies → Enter the number of copies (1 to 99) →  (OK)

■ **To set the number of pages to print per sheet**

Page format → Select an item

- When selecting *Duplicate*, select *Pages per sheet* and select a setting (1 to 16 up).

■ **To set whether to print the date or not**

Print date → Select an item

■ **To set whether to print a border or not**

Border → Select an item

■ **To set print quality**



Print quality → Select an item

6  (Preview) →  (Print)



Advanced Settings

Capturing Still Images



Switching Shooting Mode

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item



Setting Shooting Size

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item



Setting Self-timer

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item



Setting White Balance

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item

Viewing Captured Pictures

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → **Pictures** or **Digital camera** → Select a file

- **Digital camera** can be selected when Memory Card is inserted.

Viewing Capturing Shortcut Key Assignments

In Viewfinder, → Highlight

Sending Captured Still Images

In Still Image Saved Confirmation window,
 ()

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

- If the captured image size exceeds 300 KB, a window for resizing the image appears after saving the image to **Data Folder**. Resize the image before attaching it (P.4-5 Attaching Files).

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)

Entering File Name of Captured Still Image

In Still Image Saved Confirmation window,
 → **Rename** → Enter file name

Setting Captured Still Image as Wallpaper etc.

In Still Image Saved Confirmation window,
 → **Set as**

■ To set image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Use (Rotate) to adjust position as required → Use or to adjust size as required → (Set)

■ To set image to Incoming image

Caller ID → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → (Set)

Enlarging Captured Still Image

In Still Image Saved Confirmation window,
 → **Zoom**

- Press or to zoom in/out.
- Press to change a display position.

Sending Still Images Opened via Quick Play

In Viewfinder, → View still images with
 or → (Send)

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select **Phone, Memory card or Digital camera** to view images.

Deleting Images Opened via Quick Play

In Viewfinder, → View still images with
 or → → **Delete**

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select **Phone, Memory card or Digital camera** to view images.

Setting Still Image Opened via Quick Play to Wallpaper etc.

In Viewfinder, → View still images with
 or → → **Set**

■ To set image to Wallpaper

Wallpaper → Use (Rotate) to adjust position as required → Use or to adjust size as required → (Set)

■ To set image to incoming image

Caller ID → Search the phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → (Set)

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select **Phone, Memory card or Digital camera** to view images.

Playing Quick Play Slide Show

In Viewfinder, → → **Slide Show**






- Press (Stop) during playback to cancel Slide Show.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select **Phone, Memory card or Digital camera** to view images.





Viewing Image Details via Quick Play

In Viewfinder, → View still images with
 or → → **Details**

- When Memory Card is inserted, press and select **Phone, Memory card or Digital camera** to view images.



Enlarging Still Images Opened via Quick Play

In Viewfinder,  → View still images with / or  →  (Zoom)

- Press  or  to zoom in/out.
- Press  to change a display position.
- When Memory Card is inserted, press  and select **Phone**, **Memory card** or **Digital camera** to view images.



Recording Videos

Setting Shooting Mode



In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item

- When **Normal** is selected, up to 1 hour video recording is available in **Normal**.
- When **For S! Mail** is set, **Quality** is automatically set to **Economy**.



Setting Shooting Size

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item



Setting Self-timer

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item



Setting White Balance

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item

Setting Effect (Color Tone)

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item



Setting Sound Recording

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight  → Select an item


Viewing Recording Shortcut Key Assignments

In Viewfinder,  → Highlight 


Sending Recorded Video

In Video Saved Confirmation window,  ()


■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail )


■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.11-5 Sending One by One )

Viewing Recorded Video before Saving

In Video Saved Confirmation window,  → **Play**

Entering File Name of Recorded Video

 → **Rename** → Enter file name

Media Player



Media Player	7-2
Downloading Music/Movies	7-3
Downloading Music/Movies	7-3
Saving Music/Movies from PC to Memory Card	7-3
Playing Music	7-3
Media Player Music Window	7-4
Playing Music	7-4
Playing Movies	7-5
Media Player Movie Window	7-6
Playing Movies	7-7
Using Playlist	7-8
Creating Playlist	7-8
Playing Playlist	7-8
Advanced Settings	
Music Playback	7-8
Movie Playback	7-10
Playlist	7-12

Media Player

Media Player is equipped with this handset.
Download music or movies from Yahoo! Keitai; create your own playlists.
In this chapter, usage of Media Player is described.

Playing Media Files



Play music or movies via Media Player (➔P.7-4, P.7-7).
Select a music or movie file from folders or playlists.

Downloading Media Files



Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or movies (➔P.7-3).

Creating Playlists



Add your favorite music or movies to a playlist and create your own music or movie album (➔P.7-8).

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a or 3gp (sound only))
Video	MPEG4/H.263 (mp4, 3gp)

- To play a music file in a format other than above, select it from **Ring songs · tones** folder in **Data Folder**. Even compatible files must be saved in **Ring songs · tones** folder to play.
- Use Speaker or Stereo Earphone/Earphone Microphone to listen to media files. When using Speaker, remove Stereo Earphone/Earphone Microphone from handset (when music/movie is played with Stereo Earphone/Earphone Microphone connected in Manner Mode, handset playback confirmation appears if Stereo Earphone/Earphone Microphone is removed from handset).
- Earphone Microphone can be used not only for playing music but also for calling. While playing music with Earphone Microphone connected, press switch of Earphone Microphone for 1+ seconds to answer the call.

Note

- Movie files exceeding 176 x 144 in resolution cannot be played.

Downloading Music/Movies

Access Yahoo! Keitai to download music or movies and save them to handset.

Downloading Music/Movies

Access Yahoo! Keitai and download music or movie.

1  → *Media Player*

2 Download music or movie

■ To download music

Music → *All music* → *Download music* or *Music search*

- Select *Music search* to access site and search music.

■ To download movie



Movie → *All movies* → *Download movies*

Note

- Downloading music or video may incur high Packet Communication charges due to large data size.

Saving Music/Movies from PC to Memory Card

1 Insert Memory Card into handset

- Press  → *Data Folder* →  (Memory) to confirm folders are created.

2 Remove Memory Card from handset (ⓄP.10-8) and insert into PC

3 Save music/movie file on PC to the specified Memory Card folder

- Save files to the following folders by type:
Music file:PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds & Ringtones
Movie file:PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Videos
- After saving files, insert Memory Card and load the files to play.

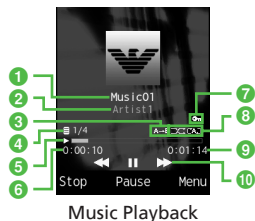
Playing Music

Folder structure of *Music* is as follows.

Folder	Description
Last played/Now playing	Last played file or current playing file
All music	All playable files in <i>Music</i>
Playlists	View playable file on <i>Music</i> in created folders
Recent music	100 recently played files (Most recent played file appears first)
Most played music	100 most frequently played files (Most frequent played file appears first)
Artists	All playable files in <i>Music</i> by Artist
Albums	All playable files in <i>Music</i> by Album
Genres	All playable files in <i>Music</i> by Genre

- Memory Card files may take longer to load.
- Showing/Hiding folders can be set in *Music menu* (ⓄP.12-8).

Media Player Music Window



Music Playback

- 1 Title (File name when title is unknown)
- 2 Artist's name
- 3 Repeat section
- 4 File number/Total number of files
- 5 Playing status: Play/Pause/Stop
- 6 Elapsed playing time
- 7 Copyright protection
- 8 Repeat mode
 - ➔ : Off
 - ⏮ : Repeat one
 - ⏪ : Repeat all
 - ⏩ : Shuffle
- 9 Progress bar
- 10 Total playing time

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to perform shortcut.
Available operations vary by playing status and file type.

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
	Next tune
	Previous tune/Beginning of current tune
	Volume up
	Volume down
	Stop
	Menu
	Repeat pattern setting
	Time search
	Repeat section

Playing Music

1 → **Media Player** → **Music**

2 Play a file

■ **To play most recently played file**

Last played

- While playing, *Now playing* appears and Music playback window is displayed.

■ **To select from all files**

All music → Highlight a file → (Play)

■ **To select from playlist**

Playlists → Select a playlist → Highlight a file → (Play)

■ **To select from list of recently played files**

Recent music → Highlight a file → (Play)


■ **To select from list of often played files**

Most played music → Highlight a file → (Play)


■ **To select from list of Artists**













Artists → Select an Artist → Highlight a file → (Play)

To select from list of *Albums*

Albums → Select an Album → Highlight a file →  (Play)

To select from list of *Genres*

Genres → Select a genre → Highlight a file →  (Play)




- Highlight **All music** or playlist name and press  (Play) to play all the appropriate files in list.
- Press  (Pause) or  to pause. To resume playback, press  (Play) or .
- To end playback and return to list window, press  (Stop) and press . However, pressing  while displaying menu or operating menu closes menu or returns to previous window.
- While Media Player is active, press  or  to hide Music playback window keeping the music playing.
In Standby, press  to end BGM playback. When end confirmation appears, choose **Yes**.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in **All music** list with .
- If an incoming call arrives while music is playing on Media Player window, playback pauses and ringtone sounds. When the call ends, the playback remains in pause and Music playback window reappears. For BGM, playback resumes automatically after call ends.
- If Alarm is set while a file is playing on Player window, playback pauses, Alarm sounds and indicator appears at the set time. Press any key to stop Alarm and clear the indicator. For BGM, playback resumes.

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.7-8

- Searching Files by Title or Artist Name
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
- Deleting Files
- Renaming File
- Protecting File to Restrict Changing or Deleting
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Playing from Specified Point
- Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback
- Connecting to Web Link
- Checking Shortcut Key Assignments


Settings

- Set Repeat mode ( P.12-8)
- Adjust Tone volume level ( P.12-8)
- Set Music sub folders ( P.12-8)

Playing Movies

Folder structure of **Movie** is as follows.

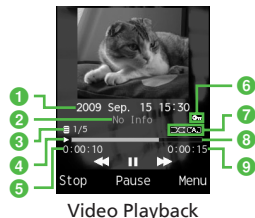
Folder	Description
Last played	Most recently played file
All movies	View all playable files in Movie
Playlists	View playable files in Movie in created folders
Recent movie	100 recently played files (Most recently played file appears first)
Most played movie	100 frequently played files (Most frequently played file appears first)

- Showing/Hiding folders can be set in **Movie menu** ( P.12-8).

Note

- Deleting files or changing file settings in **All movies** folder affects folders in **Movie** in **Data Folder**.

Media Player Movie Window



- 1 Video title (or file name when title is unknown)
- 2 Artist
- 3 File number/Total number of files
- 4 Playing status: Play/Pause/Stop
- 5 Elapsed playing time
- 6 Copyright protection
- 7 Repeat mode
 - ▶ : Off
 - ⌂ : Repeat one
 - ⌂ : Repeat all
 - ⌂ : Shuffle
- 8 Progress bar
- 9 Total playing time

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the assigned key to perform shortcut. Available operations vary by playing status and file type.

Normal Screen Display (Portrait)

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
	Next clip
	Previous clip/Beginning of current clip
	Volume up
	Volume down
	Stop
	Menu
	Repeat pattern setting
	Full Screen View
	Time search
	Switch display size
	Screen capture
	Play faster
	Play slower
	Repeat section

Full Screen View (Landscape)

Key	Description
	Play/Pause
	Volume up
	Volume down
	Next clip
	Previous clip/Beginning of current clip
	Repeat pattern setting
	Normal screen display
	Screen capture
	Play faster
	Play slower
	Repeat section

Playing Movies

1  → *Media Player* → *Movie*

2 Play a file


■ To play most recently played file

Last played


■ To select from all files

All movie → Highlight a file →  (Play)


■ To select from playlist










Playlists → Select a playlist → Highlight a file →  (Play)

■ To select from list of recently played files

Recent movie → Highlight a file →  (Play)

■ To select from list often played files

Most played movie → Highlight a file →  (Play)







- Highlight *All movies* or playlist name and press  (Play) to play all the appropriate files in list.
- Press  (Pause) or  to pause. To resume playback, press  (Play) or .
- To end playback and return to list window, press  (Stop) and press . However, pressing  while displaying menu or operating menu closes menu or returns to previous window.
- When Memory Card is inserted, Memory Card files appear in *All movies* list with .

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.7-10

- Searching Files by Title or Artist Name
- Adding Files to Playlist
- Sending Files
- Sorting Files
- Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key
- Deleting Files
- Renaming File
- Protecting File to Restrict Changing or Deleting
- Viewing File Details
- Changing Order of Files in Playlist
- Renaming Playlist
- Deleting Playlist
- Displaying Video in Full Screen
- Changing Display Size
- Playing from Specified Point
- Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback
- Capturing Still Image from Video
- Connecting to Web Link
- Changing Playback Speed
- Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

Settings

- Set Repeat mode ( P.12-8)
- Adjust Tone volume level ( P.12-8)
- Set Backlight ( P.12-8)
- Set Video sub folders ( P.12-8)
- Show or hide Video thumbnails ( P.12-8)
- Access or ignore linked information ( P.12-8)

Using Playlist

Create playlist to make your own album.


Creating Playlist


Create up to 20 playlists, containing up to 100 files each.

1  → *Media Player* → *Music or Movie* → *Playlists* →  → *Create playlist*

2 Enter playlist name


3 Select created playlist

4  → *Add* → *Files*

5 Check files to save →  (Save)

Playing Playlist

1  → *Media Player* → *Music or Movie* → *Playlists*

2 Highlight a playlist to play →  (Play)

• Playlist cannot be played if included file has been deleted, or file is added from Memory Card and Memory Card is removed. Insert Memory Card and load file to play.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P. 7-12


- Creating Playlist Including All Files in Existing Playlist

Advanced Settings




Music Playback

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode


 → *Media Player* → *Music* → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  (Set as) → Select an item

- Alternatively, pause in Music playback window, press  (Set as).
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to ringtone.


Searching Files by Title or Artist Name

 → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music* →  → *Search files* → Check items to check → Select Search field → Enter title or artist name →  (Search)

Adding Files to Playlist

 → *Media Player* → *Music* → *All music*


■ To add an item

Highlight a file to add →  → *Add to playlist* → *Selected* → Select a playlist

■ To add multiple items

 → *Add to playlist* → *Multiple* → Check files to add →  (Save) → Select a playlist

Sending Files

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Send**

To send via message

Via message → (ⓧP.4-4 S! Mail ②)

To send via Bluetooth®


Via Bluetooth → (ⓧP.11-5 Sending One by One ②)

Sorting Files

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** →  → **Sort by** → Select an item

- Sorting order is set to default when returning to Standby.
-


Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Download Content key**

Deleting Files

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → Select a folder

To delete an item

Highlight a file →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**

To delete multiple items


 → **Delete** → **Multiple** → Check files to delete →  (Delete) → **Yes**

To delete all items


 → **Delete** → **All** → **Yes**

- To delete all files in **All music** folder, entering Phone Password is required.
-


Renaming File


● → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Highlight a file →  → **Rename** → Enter file name

Protecting File to Restrict Changing or Deleting

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → **All music** → Highlight a file →  → **Lock** or **Unlock**

Viewing File Details


● → **Media Player** → **Music** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Details**

- Alternatively, in Music playback window, press .
-

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → **Playlists** → Select a playlist → Highlight a file →  → **Move track in playlist** → Highlight a destination with  →  (OK)


Renaming Playlist

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → **Playlists** → Highlight a playlist →  → **Rename** → Enter playlist name



Deleting Playlist

● → **Media Player** → **Music** → **Playlists**



To delete an item

Highlight a playlist →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**


To delete all items

 → **Delete** → **All** → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → **Yes**

Playing from Specified Point


In Music playback window,  → **Time search** → Enter duration →  (Play)


Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback

In Music playback window,  → **Transfer to A/V headset** → Select a destination device

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting **Transfer to A/V headset**, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch sound output to handset while playing music, select **Transfer to Phone**.
- If a Bluetooth®-compatible stereo headphone is saved or has been connected, you can switch to stereo headphone without selecting a destination device.

Connecting to Web Link

In Music playback window,  → **Connect web link** → **Yes**



- The files that can be connected to web link,  appears in Music playback window.


Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

In Music playback window,  → **Shortcut**




Movie Playback

Setting Files to Ringtone in Normal Mode


 → **Media Player** → **Movie** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  (Set as) → Select an item

- Alternatively, pause in Video playback window, press  (Set as).
- This operation is not available for files that cannot be added to ringtone.


Searching Files by Title or Artist Name

 → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** →  → **Search files** → Check items to check → Select Search field → Enter title or artist name →  (Search)

Adding Files to Playlist

 → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies**



■ To add an item

Highlight a file to add →  → **Add to playlist** → **Selected** → Select a playlist

■ To add multiple items

 → **Add to playlist** → **Multiple** → Check files to add →  (Save) → Select a playlist

Sending Files

 → **Media Player** → **Movie** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Send**

■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)



■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)

Sorting Files

 → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** →  → **Sort by** → Select an item


Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key

 → **Media Player** → **Movie** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Download Content key**

Deleting Files

● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → Select a folder

To delete an item

Highlight a file to delete →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**

To delete multiple items


 → **Delete** → **Multiple** → Check files to delete →  (Delete) → **Yes**

To delete all items


 → **Delete** → **All** → **Yes**

- To delete all files in **All movies** folder, entering Phone Password is required.


Renaming File


● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Highlight a file →  → **Rename** → Enter file name

Protecting File to Restrict Changing or Deleting

● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **All movies** → Highlight a file →  → **Lock** or **Unlock**

Viewing File Details


● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Details**

- Alternatively, in Video playback window, press .

Changing Order of Files in Playlist

● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **Playlists** → Select a playlist → Highlight a file to move →  → **Move track in playlist** → Highlight a destination with  → ● (OK)


Renaming Playlist

● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **Playlists** → Highlight a playlist →  → **Rename** → Enter playlist name


Deleting Playlist

● → **Media Player** → **Movie** → **Playlists**

To delete an item

Highlight a playlist to delete →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**

To delete all items

 → **Delete** → **All** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → **Yes**


Displaying Video in Full Screen

In Video playback window,  → **Full screen view**


Changing Display Size

In Video playback window,  → **Resolution** → Select an item

Playing from Specified Point


In Video playback window,  → **Time search** → Enter duration → ● (Play)

Switching to Bluetooth® Headphones during Playback


In Video playback window,  → **Transfer to A/V headset** → Select a destination device


- When no device is registered, search and register new device.
- If setting to **Transfer to A/V headset**, volume adjustment on handset is unavailable. Adjust on the headphones.
- Playback with monaural headphones is unavailable.
- Some files may not be played.
- To switch output to handset while playing video, select **Transfer to Phone**.

Capturing Still Image from Video


In Video playback window,  → **Capture frame** → ● (Save)

Connecting to Web Link

In Video playback window,  → **Connect web link** → **Yes**

- The files that can be connected to web link,  appears on Video playback window.

Changing Playback Speed

In Video playback window,  → **Playback speed** → Select an item

- Sound is not played while changing playback speed.


Checking Shortcut Key Assignments

In Video playback window,  → *Shortcut*


Playlist

Creating Playlist Including All Files in Existing Playlist

■ To create music playlist

- → *Media Player* → *Music* → *Playlists*
- Select a playlist →  → *Add* → *Playlist*
- Select a playlist to add all files

■ To create video playlist

- → *Media Player* → *Movie* → *Playlists*
- Select a playlist →  → *Add* → *Playlist*
- Select a playlist to add all files

Handy Extras



Useful Handset Applications	8-2
Calendar	8-3
Viewing Calendar	8-3
Opening Calendar	8-3
Saving Schedule	8-3
Viewing Schedule	8-4
Alarms	8-4
Setting/Resetting Alarm	8-4
Editing Alarm	8-5
Calculator	8-5
Converter	8-6
Converting Currencies	8-6
Converting Units	8-6
World Clock	8-7
Viewing World Clock	8-7
Selecting Areas	8-7
Notepad	8-7
Adding Notepad	8-7
Viewing Notepad	8-7
Tasks	8-7
Saving Tasks	8-7
Viewing Tasks	8-7
Marking a Task as Completed	8-8
Voice Recorder	8-8
Voice Recorder Window	8-8
Recording Sound	8-8
Playing Sound	8-9
Stopwatch	8-9

File Viewer	8-9
Using File Viewer	8-9
Zooming In/Out	8-10
Dictionary	8-11
Advanced Settings	
Calendar	8-11
Alarm	8-13
Currency/Unit Conversion	8-14
World Clock	8-14
Notepad	8-15
Tasks	8-15
Voice Recorder	8-17
File Viewer	8-17

Useful Handset Applications

Handset includes helpful lifestyle tools including Calendar and Bar Code Reader.

Calendar



View calendar and save schedule entries (P.8-3).

Alarm



Set Alarms (P.8-4).

Calculator



Use handset as a calculator (P.8-5).

Converter



Convert currencies or units of measure (P.8-5).

World Clock



View current time in major world cities (P.8-7).

Notepad



Create/view text memos (P.8-7).

Tasks



Create/view to-do lists (P.8-7).

Voice Recorder



Record/playback voice memos, etc. (P.8-8).

Stopwatch



Use handset as a stopwatch (P.8-9).

File Viewer



View documents (P.8-9).

Dictionary




Find English expressions for Japanese words or vice versa (P.8-11).

Calendar

Display Calendar and add schedules to Calendar. Select from three view modes. Add title, start date or other information. Save up to 200 events including Tasks.

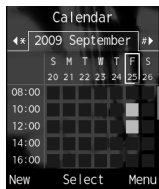
Viewing Calendar

Select from three view modes: Monthly, Weekly and Daily.

- To switch view mode, press  → **View mode** (⊕P.8-12).
- If you select date with calendar entries, the entries appear.

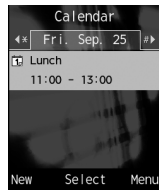


Monthly View





















Weekly View






White rectangle: Highlighted position
Background color: Today
Blue-highlight: Saturdays
Red-highlight: Sundays and holidays
┘ (Blue): Schedule registered



Daily View

- In Monthly view, to go to previous/next month, press  or , or highlight Year/Month field and press .
- In Weekly view, to go to previous/next week, press  or , or highlight Year/Month field and press .
- In Daily view, to go to previous/next day, press , , or .
- If you select date with Calendar entries or Alarms set, the titles of Calendar entries, icons and other items appear.

-  : Schedule (*No category*)
-  : Schedule (*Appointment*)
-  : Schedule (*Meeting*)
-  : Schedule (*Business*)
-  : Schedule (*Holiday*)
-  : Schedule (*Anniversary*)
-  : Schedule (*Birthday*)
-  : Schedule (*Phone call*)
-  : Schedule (*Date*)

-  : Schedule (*Travel*)
-  : Schedule (*Miscellaneous*)
-  : Holiday
-  : Alarm set
-  : Repetition set

Opening Calendar



Saving Schedule



Save up to 200 events including tasks. Example: Saving title, start date & time




- For other items, see "Saving to Schedule" (⊕P.8-11).



- In Calendar window, select target date before Step 2 to display the date in Start date or End date field.

Viewing Schedule

- 1 
- 2 Move cursor to the day to view and  (Select)
- 3 Select a schedule to view

- To edit schedule, press  (Edit) after Step 3. Edit items, and press  (Save) to save.
- To view the registered number of Calendar and task in Calendar window, press  → *Memory status*.

Advanced

 P.8-11

- Switching View Mode
- Opening a Specific Date
- Viewing Schedule by Category
- Sending Schedule
- Deleting Schedule
- Viewing Secret Schedule
- Checking Missed Alarm Event
- Viewing Calendar Memory Status
- Sending Schedule as vFile
- Saving Schedule as vFile
- Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

Alarms




Save up to five Alarms. Use Alarm activation to activate or cancel alarm settings. Set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

Setting/Resetting Alarm



Example: Setting Alarm time

- For other items, see "Saving Alarm" (P.8-13).



Setting Alarm

- 1  → *Tools* → *Alarms*
- 2 Select from *Alarm1* to *Alarm5*
- 3 Enter alarm time
- 4  (Save)
 - Set or edit Alarm and press  (Save), Alarm is set to **On** automatically.

- At Alarm time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Handset vibrates if Vibration is not **Off**. Press any key to stop alarm sound, vibration, and to clear indication display.



- During a call, or while connecting or dialing (**Connecting...** or **Dialing...** appears) at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator appears. When **Alert on call** on **System sounds** is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Press any key to clear indication display. When **Snooze** is set to other than **Off**, press  (End).
- When Alarm is set,  appears in Standby.
- If multiple alarms are set for the same time, first one set sounds first. If Schedule or Tasks alarm is set for the same time as Alarm (**Tools**), Alarm sounds first.
- When Manner mode is active, settings in **For manner mode** (P.8-14) applies.
- If Camera or Voice recorder is active at Alarm Time, Alarm sounds upon operation termination.

Resetting Alarm


- 1  → **Tools** → **Alarms** → Highlight an alarm to reset →  → **Reset this**

- To reset all alarms, select **Clear all**.


Editing Alarm

- 1  → **Tools** → **Alarms** → Select from **Alarm1** to **Alarm5** → Enter alarm time →  (**Save**)



To edit Alarm name

Select Alarm name field → Enter alarm name →  (**Save**)




To set Alarm once only or every day

Select Repeat field → **Once only** or **Everyday** →  (**Save**)

To set Alarm for a specific day

Select Repeat field → **Selected day** → Check items to set →  (**Done**) →  (**Save**)

To set Alarm sound or video

Select Alert tone/video field → Select file location → Highlight file →  (**Play**) →  (**Select**) →  (**Save**)

- If Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appear. For copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.




Advanced












 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-13

- Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode

Calculator

Perform arithmetic operations up to 13 digits.


- 1  → **Tools** → **Calculator**
- 2 Use keypad,  and  to calculate

- To enter $+$, $-$, \times or \div , press , ,  or .
- To view the result, press .
- To enter decimal numbers, (/ or) , press  (. /) repeatedly.
- To move cursor to left/right, press  or .
- To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression, place cursor after symbol → press .
- To clear mathematical expression and the result at once, press  (C) or hold  for 1+ seconds.

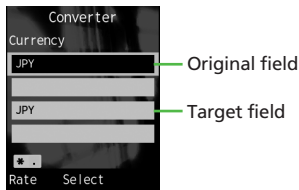
Converter

Convert various currencies or units of measure.

Converting Currencies

1  → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency*

2 Select Original field



3 Select currency


4 Highlight Original value field
→ Enter value




- To enter decimal point, press .

5 Select Target field → Select currency

6 View result value

- To toggle original and target currency, press  (Reverse).

Converting Units




1  → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Length, Weight, Volume, Area or Temperature*

2 Select Original field → Select currency

3 Highlight Original value field
→ Enter value

4 Select Target field → Select currency

5 View result value

- To toggle original and target unit, press  (Reverse).
- To toggle + and - when converting temperature, press .
- To erase value, press  (Clear).

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-14

World Clock

See current time in world's major cities.

Viewing World Clock

1 → *Tools* → *World clock*

Selecting Areas

Save second time zone to see the time in World clock.

1 → *Tools* → *World clock*

2 Highlight Area 1 or Area 2 field → Use to select city

3 (Save)

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.8-14

Notepad

Add up to 20 memos. Memos can be added even during calls (P.3-5).

Adding Notepad

1 → *Tools* → *Notepad*

2 <Add new> → Enter text

Viewing Notepad

1 → *Tools* → *Notepad* → Highlight notepad → (View)

Advanced

Advanced Settings P.8-15

- Deleting Notepad
- Sending Notepad
- Viewing Notepad Memory Status

Tasks

Save up to 200 Tasks and Schedule entries; manage by list.

Saving Tasks

Example: Saving Title, Due date & time

- For other items, see "Saving Task" (P.8-15).

1 → *Tools* → *Tasks*

2 → *Add new*

3 Enter a title

4 Highlight Due date & time field → Enter expiry date

5 (Save)


Viewing Tasks


1 → *Tools* → *Tasks*

- In Tasks, press to toggle *All tasks*, *Completed tasks*, *Uncompleted tasks* and *Expired tasks*.
- To edit task, select a task to display details, and press (Edit). Edit items, and press (Save) to save.

Marking a Task as Completed

1  → *Tools* → *Tasks*

2 Highlight a Task →
 (Status) → *Completed*

- To unmark a Task, press  (Status) → select *Uncompleted*.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-15

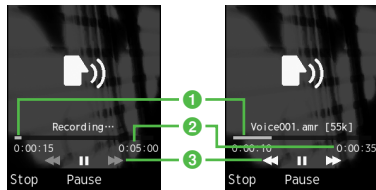
- Saving Task
- Sending Tasks as vFile
- Sorting Tasks
- Opening Task for a Specific Date
- Deleting Tasks
- Saving Tasks as vFile
- Viewing Secret Task
- Viewing Missed Alarm Event
- Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®
- Viewing Task Item Status

Voice Recorder

Record up to 60 minutes; activate from *Tools*, or *Data Folder* in *Menu*, Create Message window, or during a call.

Voice Recorder Window

Use Softkeys and Multi Selector operations to control Voice recorder.




Recording Window

Playback Window

- 1 Elapsed time
- 2 Recordable time (recording)/Playback time (playing)
- 3 Multi Selector operations




Recording Sound



Recorded sound is saved to *Ring songs · tones* in *Data Folder*.


1  → *Tools* → *Voice recorder*

2  (Record)

3  (Stop)




- Recording ends and is automatically saved. When recordable time has elapsed, recording automatically ends and is saved.
- Press  (Pause) to pause recording. While pausing, press  (Save) to end recording and save; press  (Record) to resume recording.




• To immediately confirm the recorded content, press  (Play). Press  (Pause) again to pause playback.

• To start the next recording, press  → Select *Record*.

Playing Sound

Play a sound file saved in *Data Folder*.

- 1  → *Tools* → *Voice recorder*
- 2  → *My sounds*
- 3 **Highlight a file** →  (**Play**)

- Press  or  to adjust playback volume level.
- Press  to rewind or fast forward.




Advanced


 **Advanced Settings**  P.8-17

- Recording Continuously
- Sending Recorded Sound File
- Deleting Recorded Sound File
- Editing Recorded Sound File Name
- Protecting Recorded Sound File
- Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

Stopwatch

Use handset as a stopwatch; record up to 10 lap times and total time.

- 1  → *Tools* → *Stopwatch*
- 2  (**Start**)
- 3  (**Stop**)

- While Stopwatch is running, press  (Lap) to mark a lap.

File Viewer

Using File Viewer


Select Normal view or Full screen view. In either view, Menu and shortcut (Key operation) are available to control Display.




Normal View



Full Screen View

- 1  → *Data Folder*
- 2 *Other documents* → **Select a file**
- 3 **Use menu or shortcuts to browse**









- Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in **Data Folder**. Select an image file saved in **Data Folder** and File Viewer is activated automatically.
- To scroll pages, press .
- While File Viewer is active, Switch Bar (P.2-3) is not available.
- Files with up to approximately 10 MB can be browsed. However, in some cases, files under 10 MB may not be browsed.

Note



- If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not appear properly.
- A file in any language other than Japanese or English may not appear properly.

Shortcut Key Operations

Press the key assigned shortcut to perform shortcut.

Key	Description
	Zoom in
	Zoom out
	Move to the first page
	Move to the previous page
	Rotate 90 degrees clockwise or cancel
	Move to the next page
	Move to the last page
	Select Full screen view or Normal view

Zooming In/Out

- 1  → **Data Folder**
- 2 **Other documents** → **Select a file**
- 3  → **Zoom** → **Zoom**


Advanced

 P.8-17

- Switching between Full Screen view and Normal View
- Zooming In/Out File
- Changing Display Mode for File Width or Height
- Going to Pages
- Capturing Images
- Rotating File 90 Degrees Clockwise
- Searching String within Page
- Sending Files
- Editing File Name
- Protecting File
- Viewing File Details
- Deleting Files
- Viewing Shortcut Key Assignments

Dictionary



Look up words in English/Japanese dictionaries.

- 1  → *Tools* → *Dictionary*
- 2 *English dictionary or Japanese dictionary* → Enter a word
- 3 Select a target word


Advanced Settings

Calendar

Saving to Schedule

 →  (New) → Enter a title → Highlight Start date & time field → Enter start date and time

To set End date & time

Select End date & time field → Highlight End date & time field → Enter end date and time →  (Save)










To set Schedule for all day

Select Start or End date & time field →  (Check) →  (OK) →  (Save)

To set Category

Select Category field → Select an item →  (Save)

To set Alarm

Select Alarm field → Select Alarm time field → Select an item → Select Duration field → Select an item → Select Alert tone/video field → Select file location → Highlight file →  (Play) →  (Select) → Select Volume field → Adjust volume with  →  (Play) →  (OK) → Select Vibration field → Highlight vibration pattern →  (Play) →  (Select) →  (Done) →  (Save)

● For **Other** in Alarm time or Duration, enter alarm time or duration.

● If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

To repeat a set Schedule


Select Repeat field → Select an item → Enter repeat times →  (OK) →  (Save)

● If **No repetition** is selected, entering repeat times is not required.

To set Location

Select Location field → Enter location →  (Save)

To automatically delete Schedule


Select Expiry field → Enter an item →  (Save)

● Upon expiry, schedule is automatically deleted from Calendar (e.g. if Expiry is **After 1 year**, and Repetition is unset, schedule is deleted one year from event end date). If Repetition is set, schedule is deleted one year after last repetition. Select **Off** to cancel auto delete.

To set Details

Select Details field → Enter content →  (Save)

To set Secret

Select Secret field → Select an item →  (Save)

Editing Schedule

🕒 → Select date → Select a schedule to edit
 → ⚙️ (Edit) → Edit in the same way as on registration (⌚P.8-11) → 📄 (Save)

Switching View Mode

🕒 → ☰ → *View mode* → Select an item

Opening a Specific Date

🕒 → ☰ → *Go to*

■ **To show today's date**
Today

■ **To toggle to specified date**
Date → Enter date

Viewing Schedule by Category

🕒 → ☰ → *List by category* → Select an item

Sending Schedule

🕒 → ☰ → *Send via Bluetooth* → Check schedule entries to send → 📄 (Send) → *Yes* → (⌚P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)

Deleting Schedule



■ To delete an entry

Select date → Highlight a schedule entry to delete
 → ☰ → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

■ To delete all schedules of selected date

Highlight date → ☰ → *Delete* → *All this day* → *Yes*

● To delete all schedules in the date displayed in Daily view, ☰ → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ⏹️ (OK) → *Yes*.

■ To delete schedules for a specified period of time

In Monthly view or Weekly view, ☰ → *Delete* → *Periods* → Highlight start date → Enter start date → Highlight end date → Enter end date → ⏹️ (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete schedules of currently displayed month or week

In Monthly view or Weekly view, ☰ → *Delete* → *This month* or *This week* → *Yes*

■ To delete all schedules before the highlighted date

In Monthly view or Weekly view, ☰ → *Delete* → *All past data* → Enter Phone Password → ⏹️ (OK) → *Yes*

■ To delete all schedules

In Monthly view or Weekly view, ☰ → *Delete* → *All* → Enter Phone Password → ⏹️ (OK) → *Yes*

■ To delete multiple schedules listed by category

In Monthly view or Weekly view, ☰ → *List by category* → Select a category → ☰ → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check schedule entries to delete → 📄 (Delete) → *Yes*

● To delete all schedules in category, select *All (This category)* → *Yes*.

Setting Holiday

🕒 → ☰ → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Select a field → Enter title → Enter date → Enter frequency → 📄 (Save)

Changing Holiday Display

🕒 → ☰ → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Check holidays setting to enable → 📄 (Save)

Editing Added Holiday

🕒 → ☰ → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Highlight holiday setting → ☰ → *Edit* → Edit items → 📄 (Save)

Deleting Added Holiday

🕒 → ☰ → *Settings* → *Set holiday* → Highlight holiday setting → ☰ → *Delete*

Setting Beginning of Week

🕒 → ☰ → *Settings* → *Starting day* → *Sunday* or *Monday*

Setting Default Calendar View

→ → **Settings** → **Default view mode**
→ Select an item

Setting Reminder

→ → **Settings** → **Reminder** → Select On/Off field → **On**

■ To set remind time

Select Time field → Enter time → (Save)

■ To set Alarm duration time

Select Duration field → Select an item → (Save)

- When selecting **Other**, enter duration.

■ To set Alarm sound or video

Select Alert tone/video field → Select file location
→ Highlight a file → (Play) → (Select) → (Save)

- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

■ To adjust Alarm volume

Select Volume field → Adjust volume with → (Play) → (OK) → (Save)

■ To set Vibration

Select Vibration field → Highlight vibration pattern
→ (Play) → (Select) → (Save)

Viewing Secret Schedule

→ → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → (OK)

Checking Missed Alarm Event

→ → **Missed alarm event** → Select schedule

Viewing Calendar Memory Status

→ → **Memory status**

Sending Schedule as vFile

→ Select date → Highlight schedule → → **Send**

■ To send via message

Via message → (2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (2)

Saving Schedule as vFile

→ Select date → Highlight schedule → → **Save to Data Folder** → **Phone** or **Memory card** → **Yes**

- When Memory Card is inserted, select **Memory card**.

Printing Schedule via Bluetooth®

→ Select date → Highlight schedule → → **Print via Bluetooth** → (4)

Alarm

Saving Alarm

→ **Tools** → **Alarms** → Select from **Alarm1** to **Alarm5** → Enter alarm time

■ To edit Alarm name

Select Alarm name field → Enter alarm name → (Save)

■ To set Alarm once only or every day

Select Repeat field → **Once only** or **Everyday** → (Save)

■ To set Alarm for a specific day

Select Repeat field → **Selected day** → Check items to set → (Done) → (Save)

■ To set Alarm sound or video

Select Alert tone/video field → Select file location
→ Highlight file → (Play) → (Select)
→ (Save)

- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset move confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

■ To adjust Alarm volume

Select Volume field → Adjust volume with → (Play) → (OK) → (Save)





■ To set Vibration

Select Vibration field → Highlight vibration pattern
→ (Play) → (Select) → (Save)

To set Snooze

Select Snooze field → Select an item →

 (Save)

- When Snooze is set to other than *Off*, alarm repeats at the specified interval until Snooze is canceled. If no key operation or any key other than  and  (End) is pressed while alarm sounds, alarm stops, and resets to sound again at specified interval. To cancel Snooze, press  or  (End).

- For *Other*, enter duration.

To set Snooze repeat time(s)

Select Snooze repeat time field → Select an item →

 (Save)



To set Alarm duration time

Select Duration field → Select an item →

 (Save)

- When selecting *Other*, enter duration.

Setting/Canceling Alarm




 → *Tools* → *Alarms* → Highlight alarm →  (On/Off)

Setting Volume or Vibration in Manner Mode

 → *Tools* → *Alarms* →  → *For manner mode*

To set Alarm volume

Select Alarm volume field → Adjust volume with

 →  (Play) →  (OK)





To set Vibration

Select *Vibration* field → Select an item




Currency/Unit Conversion**Viewing Exchange Rate**

 → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* → Highlight Original field →  (Rate)

Changing Exchange Rate

 → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* → Highlight Original field →  (Rate) → Highlight a currency to change rate →  (Edit) → Enter rate →  (Save)

Adding Currency Unit

 → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →  (Rate) →  (Add) → Enter currency unit name and rate

Deleting Added Currency Unit

 → *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency* →  (Rate) → Highlight currency unit to delete →  (Delete)

World Clock**Setting Daylight Saving Time**

 → *Tools* → *World clock* →  (DST) → Check areas to set daylight saving time →  (Done) →  (Save)

Notepad

Editing Notepad

● → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Highlight notepad
→ [Edit] (Edit) → Edit content

Deleting Notepad

● → **Tools** → **Notepad**

■ To delete an item

Highlight notepad → [Delete] → **Delete** →
Selected → **Yes**

■ To delete multiple items

Highlight notepad → [Delete] → **Delete** →
Multiple → Check notepads → [Delete] (Delete)
→ **Yes**

■ To delete all items

Highlight notepad → [Delete] → **Delete** → **All** →
Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → **Yes**

Sending Notepad

● → **Tools** → **Notepad** → Select notepad →
[Send memo] → (P.4-4 5! Mail 2)

Viewing Notepad Memory Status

● → **Tools** → **Notepad** → [Memory
status]

Tasks

Editing Tasks

● → **Tools** → **Tasks** → Select Task → ●
(Edit) → Edit Task (P.8-15) → [Save]

Saving Task

● → **Tools** → **Tasks** → [Add new] → **Add new** →
Enter title → Highlight Due date & time field
→ Enter expiry date

■ To set Alarm

Select Alarm field → Select Alarm time field →
Select alarm time → Select Duration field → Select
duration → Select Alert tone/video field → Select
file location → Highlight file → [Play] →
[Select] → Select Volume field → Adjust
volume with [Volume] → [Play] → ● (OK) →
Select Vibration field → Highlight vibration pattern
→ [Play] → ● (Select) → [Done] →
[Save]

- When **Other** is selected in Alarm time, enter alarm time.
- When **Other** is selected in Duration, enter duration.
- If a Memory Card file is set as Alarm Sound, copy to handset confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move to handset confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

- At Alarm Time, tone sounds and indicator appears. Press any key to stop the alarm sound. Press ● (OK) to clear the indication display. If Alarm is not stopped, Missed Alarm message appears. Press ● (View) to view the event.
- During a call, or while connecting or dialing (**Connecting...** or **Dialing...** appears) at Alarm time, a tone sounds and an indicator appears. If **Alert on call** in **System sounds** is unchecked, only indicator appears during a call or connection. Press ● (OK) to clear indication display.

■ To set Priority

Select Priority field → Select an item →
[Save]


■ To set Details

Select Details field → Enter content →
[Save]

■ To activate or cancel Secret

Select Secret field → Select an item →
[Save]

Sending Tasks as vFile


● → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Highlight a Task →
 → *Send*

■ To send via message


Via message → (P.4-4 SI Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → Check Tasks → (P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)

- Alternatively, in details window,  → Select *Send*.

Sorting Tasks

● → *Tools* → *Tasks* →  → *Sort by* →
 Select an item

Opening Task for a Specific Date

● → *Tools* → *Tasks* →  → *Go to*

■ To show today's Task

Today


■ To enter date to view Task


Date → Enter date

Deleting Tasks

● → *Tools* → *Tasks*

■ To delete an item


Highlight Task →  → *Delete* → *Selected*
 → *Yes*

- Alternatively, in details window,  → *Delete* to delete an item.


■ To delete multiple items

 → *Delete* → *Multiple* → Check Tasks →
 (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all items

 → *Delete* → *All tasks* → Enter Phone
 Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

Saving Tasks as vFile

● → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Select Task → 
 → *Save to Data Folder* → *Phone* or *Memory*
card → *Yes*


- With Memory Card inserted, *Memory card* can be set as save location.

Viewing Secret Task


● → *Tools* → *Tasks* →  → *Unlock*
temporarily → Enter Phone Password →
 ● (OK)


Viewing Missed Alarm Event

● → *Tools* → *Tasks* →  → *Missed*
alarm event → Select Task to view


- Alternatively, in details window,  → Select *Missed alarm event*.

Printing Tasks via Bluetooth®

● → *Tools* → *Tasks* → Highlight Task →
 → *Print via Bluetooth* → (P.6-12 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

- Alternatively, in details window,  → *Print via Bluetooth*.

Viewing Task Item Status

● → *Tools* → *Tasks* →  → *Memory*
status

Voice Recorder

Setting Recorded Sound File as Ringtone, etc.

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ (Set as) → Select
ringtone

- If **Caller ringtone** is selected, search and select Phonebook entry (➔P.2-17).

Recording Continuously

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ → **Record**

Sending Recorded Sound File

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ → **Send**

■ To send via message

Via message → (➔P.4-4 SI Mail 2)

■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (➔P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)

Deleting Recorded Sound File

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ → **Delete** → **Yes**

Editing Recorded Sound File Name

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ → **Rename** → Enter
file name

Protecting Recorded Sound File

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ → **Lock** or **Unlock**

Viewing Recorded Sound File Details

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⓘ (Record)
→ ⏏ (Stop) → ⏏ → **Details**

Changing Default Name at Saving

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⏏ →
Recording settings → **Default name** → Enter
file name

Changing Recording Time

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⏏ →
Recording settings → **Recording time** → Select
an item

Changing Default Saving Location

ⓘ → **Tools** → **Voice recorder** → ⏏ →
Recording settings → **Set default memory** →
Phone or **Memory card**

- If Memory card is not inserted, files are automatically saved to **Phone**.

File Viewer

Switching between Full Screen view and Normal View

ⓘ → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** →
Select file → ⏏ → **Full screen view** or
Normal view

Zooming In/Out File

ⓘ → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** →
Select file → ⏏ → **Zoom** → Select an item

Changing Display Mode for File Width or Height

ⓘ → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** →
Select file → ⏏ → **Fit to screen** → Select
an item

Going to Pages

ⓘ → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** →
Select file → ⏏ → **Go to** → Select an item


- For **page**, specify page number.

Capturing Images


ⓘ → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** →
Select file → ⏏ → **Screen capture**



- Captured image is saved in JPEG format to **Pictures** folder in **Data Folder** of handset.

Rotating File 90 Degrees Clockwise


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Rotate*

Searching String within Page

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Search* → Enter text to search

- After searching result is displayed, press  to search next with the same word and press  for previous result.

Sending Files

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Send*


■ To send via message

Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)


■ To send via Bluetooth®

Via Bluetooth → (P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)


Editing File Name

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Rename* → Enter file name


Protecting File

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Lock* or *Unlock*


Viewing File Details

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Details*

Deleting Files


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Delete* → *Yes*

Assigning Scroll Range

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Settings* → *Panning* →
Select an item


- Assign scroll range for each press of .

Fit to Display

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Settings* → *Reflow* →
Select an item


- When *On* content is fit to Display size.

Setting Map


● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Settings* → *Map on* →
Select an item

- When *On* current position is framed in red.



Setting Shortcut Guidance to Show/Hide in Full Screen View

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Settings* → *Controller* →
Select an item

Editing Default File Name at Screen Capture

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *Settings* → *Screen capture name* → Enter file name

Viewing Shortcut Key Assignments

● → *Data Folder* → *Other documents* →
Select file →  → *FileViewer shortcuts* →
Use  to view shortcuts

Handset Security



Security Functions	9-2
Changing Phone Password	9-3
Changing Phone Password	9-3
Changing PIN/PIN2	9-3
Lock	9-3
Phone Lock	9-3
Auto Keypad Lock	9-4
Password Lock	9-4
USIM Lock	9-4
PIN Certification	9-4
Function Lock	9-5
Application Lock	9-5
Secret Mode	9-5
Secret Data Folder	9-6
Mobile Tracker	9-6
Restoring Default Settings	9-7
Clearing Phone Memory	9-7
Resetting Settings	9-7
All Reset	9-7

Security Functions

Handset supports various security functions for your safety.

Locking & Restricting Handset Operations

Lock handset in the following procedure. Handset operations cannot be executed while locked.

- Password



Phone Lock, Password lock, USIM lock are available (P.9-3).

Application Lock

Activate to require Phone Password entry to use Phonebook, Messaging, or other privacy related functions.



Restoring Default Settings



Clear Phonebook entries; restore function settings to defaults.

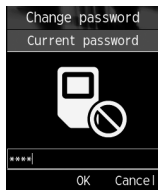
Changing Phone Password



Handset uses two kinds of security codes; Phone Password and PIN/PIN2.

Changing Phone Password






By default, Phone Password is set to "9999".

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change password*
- 2 Enter current Phone Password →  (OK)









- 3 Enter new Phone Password (4 to 8 digits) →  (OK)
- 4 Enter new Phone Password again →  (OK)

Changing PIN/PIN2

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Change PIN or Change PIN2*
 - Set *PIN certification* to *On* to enable PIN or PIN2 codes ( P.9-4).
- 2 Enter current PIN or PIN2 →  (OK)
- 3 Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) →  (OK)
- 4 Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (4 to 8 digits) →  (OK)

Advanced

Settings

-  Change PIN ( P.12-15)
-  Change PIN2 ( P.12-15)
-  Change Phone Password ( P.12-15)



Lock

Following lock methods are available.

- *Phone lock*
- *Auto keypad lock*
- *Password lock*
- *PIN certification*
- *USIM lock*
- *Secure Remote Lock*

Phone Lock


Activate this function to require Phone Password entry each time handset is powered on.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Phone lock*
- 2 *On or Off*
- 3 Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

- If set to *On*, no operation including receiving calls can be performed when handset powers on until Phone Password is entered.

Auto Keypad Lock

If set to **On**, **Auto lock** is automatically activated when Display is turned off.

1  → **Settings** → **Phone settings** → **Auto keypad lock**


2 **On or Off**

Password Lock

After this function is activated, Phone Password window appears when any key is pressed in Standby. Enter Phone Password to cancel.

1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Password lock**

2 **On or Off**

3 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK)

- Even if Password lock is set, some operations such as receiving calls can be performed.
- Upon Password Lock activation, Standby reappears. Press any key to display Phone Password entry window. Enter Phone Password to unlock, **Password lock** is automatically set to **Off**.

USIM Lock

Activate this function to require USIM Password entry to use handset with a different USIM Card.

1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **USIM lock**

2 **On or Off**

3 **Enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)

- To set to **On**, enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) again and press  (OK).

- USIM Password is dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If USIM Password matches, another USIM Card can be used in handset. USIM Password can be changed each time **USIM lock** is set to **On**.
- If you forget USIM Password, insert USIM Card with **USIM lock** set to **On** and reset all settings (➤P.9-7).

PIN Certification

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For details on USIM Card, see "USIM Card" (➤P.1-5). To activate PIN certification each time the power is turned on, set this function to **On**.

Setting

1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **PIN certification**

2 **On or Off**

3 **Enter PIN** →  (OK)

Canceling

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN lock or PIN2 lock is activated to restrict handset operations. To cancel PIN lock or PIN2 lock, perform following operations.

1 **In PUK Code entry window, enter PUK Code** →  (OK)

2 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)

3 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 again (4 to 8 digits)** →  (OK)

Note

- For more information about PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22).
- Entering incorrect PUK Code 10 consecutive times locks USIM Card (turning handset off does not reset the count).
- Once locked, USIM Card cannot be unlocked. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.13-22).

Advanced




Settings

- Activating or cancel Auto keypad lock (☞P.12-14)
- Activate or cancel Phone Lock (☞P.12-15)
- Activate or cancel Password Lock (☞P.12-15)
- Activate or cancel USIM Lock (☞P.12-15)
- Activate or cancel PIN Certification (☞P.12-15)

Function Lock



Application Lock

Activate this function to require Phone Password entry to open Phonebook, Calendar/Notepad/Tasks, Messaging, Call log, or Data Folder.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Application lock*
- 2 Check functions to lock →  (Save)
- 3 Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

Secret Mode

Select *Hide* to activate this function and hide Secret Phonebook entries, Messaging folders, Calendar schedules, or Tasks.

- 1  → *Settings* → *Security* → *Secret mode*
- 2 Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
- 3 *Show or Hide*

- Powering off handset then back on activates Secret mode.

Secret Data Folder

Activate **Secret mode** to see additional Secret folders within **Data Folder**.

- 1 → **Settings** → **Security** → **Secret data folder**
- 2 **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)
- 3 **Show or Hide**

• Powering off handset then back on activates **Secret Data Folder**.

Mobile Tracker

Activate this function to send SMS notification to a specified address when a different USIM Card is inserted. Specify up to 2 addresses.

- 1 → **Settings** → **Security** → **Mobile tracker**
- 2 **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)
- 3 **Select Activation field** → **On**
- 4 **Select Recipients field**
- 5 **Select To field** → **Enter address** → (**Save**)
 - To enter an address from Phonebook, highlight To field → → **Phonebook** → Search Phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → Select a phone number.
- 6 **Select Sender field** → **Enter sender name**
- 7 (**Save**) → **View entered content**
- 8 (**Agree**)
 - To disagree with displayed message, press (Reject).

• When a different USIM is inserted, SMS notification is sent to the specified address upon handset activation. Nothing appears on handset whose USIM is replaced. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times when trying to set Mobile Tracker, SMS notification is also sent.

• To delete a recipient address, press and select **Delete** in Step 5.

Advanced




Settings

- Activate or cancel Application Lock (P.12-15)
- Activate or cancel Secret mode (P.12-15)
- Create or cancel Secret folders in Data Folder (P.12-15)
- Activate Mobile Tracker (P.12-16)

Restoring Default Settings

Clearing Phone Memory



Clear Data Folder, Messaging, handset Phonebook, Calendar/Notepad/Tasks, or User's dictionary. Alternatively, clear all handset files at once.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Memory settings** → **Phone memory** → **Clear phone memory**
- 2 **Check items to delete** →  (Delete)
- 3 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK) → **Yes**

Resetting Settings



Clear saved contents/settings regarding Settings and **Alarm** in **Tools**; then restore default settings. The following settings are not affected.

Item	Unaffected Settings
Call settings	<i>Voice mail On</i> settings <i>Call forwarding On</i> settings <i>Call waiting</i> settings <i>Call barring</i> settings <i>Edit Black list</i> contents
Phonebook	Entry details, <i>Group settings</i>
Security	<i>USIM lock</i> , <i>PIN certification</i> , <i>Change PIN</i> , <i>Change PIN2</i>
Calendar	<i>Calendar</i> settings

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Reset** → **Reset settings**
- 2 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK) → **Yes**
 - Handset restarts after choosing **Yes**.



All Reset

Restore handset to defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Call log (Dialed/Received), Messages, and Data Folder contents/settings. However, preinstalled files are not deleted.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Security** → **Reset** → **All reset**
- 2 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK) → **Yes**
 - Handset restarts after choosing **Yes**.

Advanced

Settings

- Restore handset to defaults ( P.12-15)
- Restore Settings to default values ( P.12-15)

Memo

A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing a memo.

Data Folder & Memory
















Data Folder	10-2
Viewing Files	10-3
Picture Browser	10-3
Zooming In/Out Image	10-4
Managing Files/Folders	10-4
Creating Folders	10-4
Renaming File/Folder	10-5
Moving Files/Folders	10-5
Copying Files/Folders	10-6
Deleting Files/Folders	10-6
Memory Card	10-7
Initializing Memory Card	10-8
Inserting & Removing	10-8
Viewing Data in Memory Card	10-9
Viewing Memory Status	10-9
Advanced Settings	
Viewing Files	10-10
Managing Files/Folders	10-10
Memory Status	10-13













Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

Default Folders




Handset automatically sorts files into the following folders:

Folder/Description	File Type ¹
 Pictures	
Image files captured with handset Camera	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
 Digital camera	
Image files captured with the handset Camera (available only when Memory Card is inserted)	JPEG
 My Pictograms	
Downloaded pictograms	GIF, GPK
 Ring songs · tones	
Voice Recorder files, downloaded music, and other sound files	 SMAF,  MIDI,  SMF,  Mobile XMF,  MPEG4 Audio,  AMR
 Music	
Downloaded Chaku-Uta®	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, m4a, 3gp)
 Videos	
Handset video files	 MPEG4/H.263 (mp4, 3gp)

Folder/Description	File Type ¹
 Graphic Mail templates	
Templates created in S! Mail	HMT
 Other documents	
Document files requiring File Viewer for use on handset, vfiles ² , etc.	 vCard,  vCalendar,  vBookmark,  EML,  PDF,  XLS,  DOC,  PPT,  TXT,  Unsupported file



¹ Files are saved by type. Files cannot be moved to or saved in folders that do not support them.

² Use vFiles to send or transfer handset files via S! Mail, etc. Handset supports vCard (.vcf) for Phonebook entries, vCalendar (.vcs) for Task/Schedule, and vBookmark (.url) for Bookmarks.









- Save up to 999 files/folders in each default folder.
- In each folder, use **Memory status** to confirm memory. Alternatively, confirm memory in **Settings** (ⓘ P.10-9).
- Press  (Memory) in Data folder to switch to Memory Card Data Folder; press  (Phone) to return to handset Data folder.
-  appears in some folders as Downloaded Site shortcut. Select the link to access site via Yahoo! Keitai.
- If files in one folder are too large, handset performance may suffer.

Viewing Files

View picture files in Data Folder (➤P.10-3).
Select Data Folder and data list appears.


- 1  → **Data Folder**
- 2 **Select a file location**
- 3 **Highlight a file in list window**
→  (**View, Play or Select**)


•File List Indicators


-  : Nontransferable
-  : Nontransferable and unusable
-  : Protected
-  : Copy Protected File
(Transferable, Content Key Valid)
-  : Copy Protected File
(Transferable, Content Key Expired)
-  : Copy Protected File
(Nontransferable, Content Key Valid)
-  : Copy Protected File
(Nontransferable, Content Key Expired)
-  : Set as Wallpaper (➤P.10-12)/
Set as Ringtone (➤P.10-12)

•Nontransferable/copy protected files other than preinstalled ones cannot be used.

•Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

To activate Camera, highlight **Pictures** folder or an image files in **Pictures** folder →  → Select **Take Photo**.

To activate Video Camera, highlight **Videos** folder or a video files in **Videos** folder →  → Select **Record video**.

To activate Voice Recorder, highlight **Ring songs · tones** folder or a sound files in **Ring songs · tones** folder →  → Select **Record sound**.

Note

- A JPEG file whose resolution is 5000 x 5000 or less can be zoomed or set as an incoming image or a wallpaper. Except JPEG files, files whose size is 1.3 MB or less and resolution is 1600 x 1600 or less can be zoomed or set as an incoming image or a wallpaper.
- During playback, video file thumbnails do not appear in a list view for **Videos** folder etc.

Picture Browser




View still images in normal or full screen view.
Landscape still images are automatically rotated and enlarged in full screen view.



Normal Screen View



Full Screen View


- 1  → **Data Folder**
- 2 **Pictures**
- 3 **Highlight a file in list window**
→  (**View**)
 - Press  (Full) to view in full screen view.
 - Press  to return to the previous view.
- 4 Use  to move image

•Some images may not appear.








Sorting Images

Select sorting rule of images for the picture browser.

- By Folder (display images by folder)
- By Composition (display images by image composition)
- By Color (display images by entire color)
- By Timeline (display images in the order of captured date and time)

- 1 View image files (⇨P.10-3)
- 2 Use  to select sorting rule

Zooming In/Out Image

- 1  → *Data Folder*
- 2 *Pictures*
- 3 Highlight a file in list window
→  (View)
- 4  (Full) →  (Zoom)
- 5 Use  or  to zoom in/out
 - To scroll window, press .

Advanced

 P.10-10




- Toggling Memory Card and Handset Data Folder
- Viewing Slide Show
- Confirming File/Folder Details

Managing Files/Folders

Make sub-folder under *Pictures* or *Videos* folder and copy, move, delete folders or files.



Creating Folders

Create sub-folder in Default folders.
Use *Set secret* to hide created folder.

- 1  → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder to create a sub-folder
- 3  → *Manage* → *Create folder*
 - If no file is in the sub-folder, press  → Select *Create folder*.
- 4 Enter name

• Sub-folder cannot be created in a created folder.




Renaming File/Folder


- 1  → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder → Highlight a file or sub-folder to rename
- 3  → *Manage* → *Rename* or *Rename folder*
- 4 Enter name

- Protected files cannot be renamed.





Moving Files/Folders

When Memory Card is inserted, move files or folders between handset (Phone) and Memory Card.

- 1  → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder → Highlight a file or sub-folder to move
- 3  → *Move*
- 4 Move files or folders
 - **To move an item**
Selected
 - **To move multiple items**
Multiple → Check files or sub-folders to move →  (Move)
 - **To move all files or sub-folders in the same folder**
All
- 5 Select a destination folder → *Move here*
 - When Memory Card is inserted, select *Phone* or *Memory card*, then select a move destination folder.

- Protected files cannot be moved.
- If target file/folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file/folder name.
- To move a file set for Wallpaper or Ringtone to Memory Card, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to release the setting and move the file. When moving multiple or all files, choose *No* to move only files without set functions. Press  (Cancel) to cancel.

Note

- Downloaded files may not appear/play properly if moved to another device or when a different USIM Card is inserted in handset.
- Nontransferable and unusable files , protected files , or nontransferable and Copy protected files  or  cannot be moved to Memory Card.

Copying Files/Folders

Copy file or folder and paste in the same or another folder. When Memory Card is inserted, copy folders between handset and Memory Card.


1  → *Data Folder* → Select default folder

2 Highlight a file or folder to copy →  → *Copy*

3 Copy file or folder

■ **To copy an item**
Selected

■ **To copy multiple items**

Multiple → Check files or folders to copy
→  (Copy)

■ **To copy all files or folders in the same folder**
All

4 Select a destination folder →
Paste here

• When Memory Card is inserted, select *Phone* or *Memory card*, then select a copy destination folder.

- When pasting files or folders in the same location as the original, numbers such as "_001" are automatically added to pasted file/folder names.
- If target file or folder with the same name exists, text entry window appears; edit file or folder name.


Note

- Nontransferable files cannot be copied.

Deleting Files/Folders

Deleting Files


1  → *Data Folder* → Select a file location


2 Highlight a file to delete in list window →  → *Delete*

3 Delete a file

■ **To delete an item**
Selected → *Yes*




■ **To delete multiple items**

Multiple → Check messages to delete →
 (Delete) → *Yes*

■ **To delete all files in the same folder**
All → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
→ *Yes*

- When deleting a file that is set to a function or protected, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to cancel the setting and delete the file. When deleting multiple files, choose *No* to delete only files not set to functions and unprotected files.
- When deleting files with Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete both file and Content Key.

Deleting Created Sub-folders

- 1  → *Data Folder*
- 2 Select default folder → Highlight created sub-folder to delete →  → *Delete folder*
- 3 Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → *Yes*

- Enter Phone Password only when a file is saved in a sub-folder.

- When files that are set to wallpaper or ringtone, protected files or files with copyright protection are in the folder, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to cancel the setting and delete it. When **No** is chosen, only files with no settings nor protection are deleted and the folder is not deleted.
- If a file has Content Key, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to delete both the file and Content Key.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.10-10

- Sending Files
- Printing Still Images via Bluetooth®
- Selecting Folder List
- Sorting Files
- Setting Secret in Sub-folder
- Canceling Secret Setting Temporarily
- Activating Camera Mode
- Activating Video Mode
- Recording Sound
- Setting & Canceling File Lock

Memory Card

830SC is compatible with microSD™ and microSDHC™ Memory Card.

- Use only recommended Memory Card. Other Memory Cards may not perform properly.
- Do not place labels or stickers on Memory Card. These items may affect card performance or result in lost information.
- Never disassemble or modify a Memory Card.
- Do not expose Memory Card to strong impacts, pressure or liquids.
- Do not touch Memory Card terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- Keep Memory Card away from dust, high humidity, or excessive heat.
- Do not use in the presence of corrosive gases.
- Avoid heat sources and do not dispose of in fire.
- Memory Card is a consumable item. Card performance deteriorates with usage.



- SoftBank Mobile recommends 64, 128, 256, 512 MB, 1, 2, 4*, or 8* GB cards.
* microSDHC™ Memory Card only.

Note

- Protect important information
Memory Card files may be lost or damaged by accident or malfunction. Back-up entries and store separately. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage from lost or altered information.
- Memory Cards do not have Write Protection Switch. There is a risk of accidental erasure or overwriting of files.

Initializing Memory Card

Note that formatting deletes all data in Memory Card.
Always perform following operations before using purchased Memory Card.

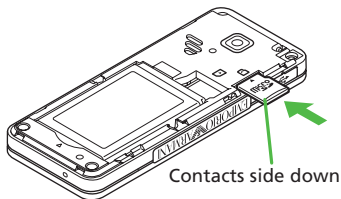
- 1  → *Settings* → *Memory settings*
- 2 *Memory card* → *Format memory card*
- 3 *Enter Phone Password* →  (OK) → *Yes*

Inserting & Removing

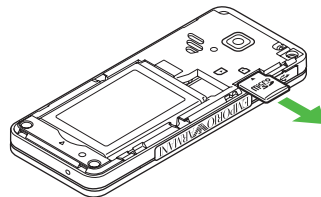
Turn handset power off before inserting or removing Memory Card.

Inserting

- 1 Remove Battery Cover (⊖P.1-9)
- 2 With contacts down, insert Memory Card until it clicks

**Removing**

- 1 Remove Battery Cover (⊖P.1-9)
- 2 Push Memory Card lightly until it clicks
- 3 Card pops out; remove it

**Note**

- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing Memory Card; may damage Memory Card or handset.
- Take care not to lose removed Memory Card.
- Avoid touching/damaging Memory Card contacts when inserting/removing it.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; may damage handset/card or result in damaged/lost files.


Advanced


Settings

- Check Memory Card details (☞ P.12-22)
- Format Memory Card (☞ P.12-22)
- Rename Memory Card (☞ P.12-22)
- Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card (☞ P.12-22)

Viewing Data in Memory Card

1  → *Data Folder*

2  (Memory)

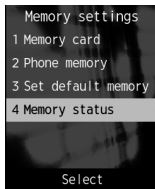
- Insert Memory Card before checking it.
- To check handset Data Folder, press  (Phone).

Viewing Memory Status

View the following status.

- Mail boxes for *SMS/S! Mail*
- Memory in *Data Folder*
- Schedule or Tasks items registered
- Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)


1  → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status*



2 View each item

To view Messaging status

Messaging

- Received, Drafts, Sent and Unsent Message memory appear by Size.
- Press  (Count) in *Messaging (by size)* to view memory by count.
- USIM Card SMS appears by Count only.

To view Data Folder status

Data Folder → *Phone memory* or *Memory card*

To view Schedule or Tasks status

Calendar

To view Phonebook

Phonebook


Advanced

Advanced Settings (☞ P.10-13)

Settings


- Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory (☞ P.12-22)
- Clear Phone Memory (☞ P.12-22)
- View Memory status (☞ P.12-22)


Advanced Settings**Viewing Files****Viewing Memory Card and Handset Data Folder**

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **Memory card** or **Phone**




- Available when Memory Card is inserted.

Viewing Slide Show


● → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** → Highlight a file → ● (View) →  → **Slide show**

- To pause/resume Slide show, press ● (Pause/Restart).
- To stop Slide show, press  (Stop).

Changing Picture View of Group


● → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** → Highlight a file in list window → ● (View) → Use  to select view option → Use  or  to move images by group unit

Purchasing or Acquiring Content Key


● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **Manage** → **Download Content key**

Displaying Guide in Full Screen


● → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** → Highlight a file in list window → ● (View) → ● (Full) → 

- Press ● (Full) to display the guide, and it disappears in approximately 3 seconds. When the guide is hidden, press  to display it again.

Confirming File/Folder Details

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file or folder location → Highlight a file or folder →  → **Details**


Managing Files/Folders**Sending Files**

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file →  → **Send**


■ **To send via message**
Via message → (P.4-4 S! Mail 2)

■ **To send via Bluetooth®**
Via Bluetooth → (P.11-5 Sending One by One 2)


Printing Still Images via Bluetooth®

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Select a file →  → **Print via Bluetooth** → (P.6-12 Printing via Bluetooth® 4)

Selecting Folder List


● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **View by** → Select an item

Sorting Files


● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file in list window →  → **Sort by** → Select an item

- Sort by following order.
 - Descending order of date (**Date**)
 - File type (**Type**)
 - File name (**Name**)
 - Ascending order of file size (**Size**)
 - Title (**Title**)
 - Content Key status (**Content key type**)
- Folders appear at the top of list.
- When selecting **Type**, files are sorted in alphabetical order by file extension.
- When selecting **Name**, files are sorted in order of numerics → alphabets (single-byte) → Japanese syllabary → alphabets (double-byte)
- Files in **Graphic Mail templates** folder cannot be sorted by **Type**.
- When selecting **Content key type**, files appear as follows: Unrestricted → Nontransferable → Copy Protected (Content key valid) → Copy Protected (Content Key expired) → Invalid Nontransferable.
- Files without title names cannot be sorted by **Type**.

Adding Sound Files or Video Files to Playlist


● → **Data Folder** → Select a folder → Highlight a file →  → **Manage** → **Add to playlist**


Showing/Hiding File/Folder Information

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **Manage** → **Show file info** or **Hide file info**


- In list window for folder with thumbnail view, set to show folder or file name when highlighted.



Managing Content Key in Data Folder

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **Manage** → **Content key info**


- **To view Content Key details**
Highlight Content Key to confirm → ● (Details)
- **To view/play a file**
Highlight a file to view/play in list window →  → **View** or **Play**
- When a folder containing a Content Key is opened, all Data Folder/Memory Card Content Keys appear.
- If no files require Content Key, **Content key info** does not appear.

Deleting Content Key

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **Manage** → **Content key info**


- **To delete an item**
Highlight a Content Key to delete →  → **Delete** → **Selected** → **Yes**
- **To delete all items**
 → **Delete** → **All** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → **Yes**
- If no files require Content Key, **Content key info** does not appear.

Setting Secret in Sub-folder


● → **Data Folder** → Select a default folder → Highlight a created sub-folder →  → **Set secret** or **Unset secret** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)

- Set **Secret data folder** in **Security** to **Hide** to hide created sub-folders by **Set secret**. To cancel setting, set **Secret data folder** to **Show** in advance.


Canceled Secret Setting Temporarily

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file or sub-folder →  → **Unlock temporarily** → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK)


Activating Camera Mode

● → **Data Folder** → **Pictures** →  in file list window → **Take photo**

Activating Video Mode

● → **Data Folder** → **Videos** →  in file list window → **Record video**

Recording Sound


● → **Data Folder** → **Ring songs · tones** →  in file list window → **Record sound**

Setting & Canceling File Lock

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file →  → **Lock** or **Unlock**

- Set file lock to restrict renaming, moving or deleting.

Setting Images to Wallpaper etc.

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file in list window →  (Set as)

■ To set to Wallpaper


Wallpaper → Confirm preview → ● (Set)

■ To set to incoming image

Caller ID → Search the phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17) → ● (Set)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.

Setting Sound File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file in list window →  (Set as)

■ To set to ringtone for each function


Voice ringtone, Message ringtone, Missed call notification ringtone or **Delivery report ringtone**

■ To set to ringtone for phonebook entry

Caller ringtone → Search the phonebook and select an entry (P.2-17)

- If a Memory Card file is set as incoming image or ringtone, copy file to handset first confirmation appears. For a copy protected file, move confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** to complete setting.
- Only copy protected MPEG4 AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copyrighted files with play count restriction cannot be set.

Setting Video File to Ringtone in Normal Mode

● → **Data Folder** → Select a file location → Highlight a file in list window →  (Set as)

■ To set to ringtone for each function

Voice ringtone

■ To set to ringtone for Phonebook

Caller ringtone → Select Phonebook entry to set (P.2-17)

- Only copy protected MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp) AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+ files can be set. However, copyrighted files with play count restriction cannot be set.


Registering vFile to Other Functions

● → **Data Folder** → **Other documents** → Select a vfile to register → ● (Register)


- Register a vCard or vCalendar files saved in Data Folder to Phonebook, Calendar or Tasks.

Memory Status

Deleting Registered/Saved Data

● → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status* → Select a function → Highlight item to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes* → Call up item list

■ To copy an item or multiple items

Check items to delete →  (Delete) → *Yes*

■ To delete all items

 (Mark all) →  (Delete) → Enter

Phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

- Delete message folder messages, Data Folder files, or Schedule/Tasks or Phonebook entries.
- If file(s) are locked or set for another function, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* to delete all files. Choose *No* to delete all other files only.

Connectivity & File Backup



Connectivity & File Backup	11-2
Bluetooth®	11-3
Toggling Bluetooth®	11-4
Searching for Bluetooth® Devices	11-4
Browsing Connected Device Files	11-5
Sending Data	11-5
Receiving Data	11-5
A/V Headset	11-6
USB Connection	11-7
USB Connection	11-7
Memory Card Backup	11-7
Backup Precautions	11-7
Backing Up to Memory Card	11-8
Loading from Memory Card	11-8
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	11-9
Synchronizing Phonebook	11-10
Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically	11-10
Advanced Settings	
Bluetooth® Settings	11-11
S! Addressbook Back-up	11-12

Connectivity & File Backup

Send/Receive data with Bluetooth® function and backup data with S! Addressbook Back-up.

In this chapter, data transmission and File Backup are described.

* S! Addressbook Back-up requires a separate subscription.

Data Transmission

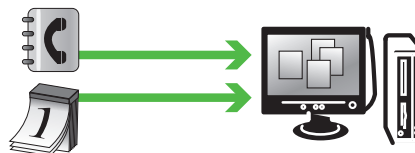
Transmit data with following functions.

- Bluetooth® (☞P.11-3)
- USB Connection (☞P.11-7)



File Backup

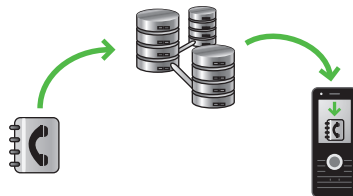
Backup data with Memory Card or PC (☞P.11-7).



Backup Phonebook entries on Server with S! Addressbook Back-up.

Even if data is lost, restore lost Phonebook entries from S! Addressbook Back-up.

Edit Phonebook backup with PC (☞P.11-9).



Bluetooth®

Send and receive Phonebook or Calendar entries, Account details, Schedules, Tasks, still images, videos, sound files, music files, and others. Send all Phonebook entries, Calendar, Schedules, Tasks or Bookmarks in a single transfer. Connect Bluetooth®-compatible handsets or other devices to exchange files wirelessly, or handsfree devices for handsfree calling. Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music. Connect handset to PCs and other devices for Internet access, etc. Bluetooth® transmissions require Bluetooth®-compatible devices with the same profiles. See 830SC Bluetooth® specifications below:


Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth® Standard Ver. 2.0
Applicable Profiles	Headset Hands-Free Serial Port Dialup Networking File Transfer Object Push Advanced Audio Distribute Audio/Video Remote Control Basic Imaging ¹ Basic Printing Generic Access Profile Service Discovery Protocol Generic Object Exchange Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class1
Communication Distance ²	Within approximately 10 m
Frequency Band Used	2.4 GHz
Bluetooth® QD ID	B015546

¹ 830SC only supports printing-related equipment.


² Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

- 830SC may not work with all Bluetooth® devices.
- File transfers may not be available with some Bluetooth® devices. Operations, displays or actions vary by device, even if device meets Bluetooth® standards by interference.
- The 2.4 GHz band used by Bluetooth® devices is shared with other devices. Transmission rate or distance may be reduced, or transmissions terminated.
- Use of handsfree devices may create noise depending on connected devices or the usage environment.
- 830SC cannot be connected to other devices when connected to Bluetooth® headphones while playing media files.
- USB and Bluetooth® cannot be used simultaneously.
- Deactivate Bluetooth® before connecting Data Cable.

1 Toggling Bluetooth®

1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Bluetooth On/Off*


2 *On or Off*

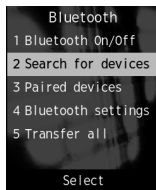
- If Bluetooth® is active,  appears at the top of Display. Transfer data or connect compatible devices.

Searching for Bluetooth® Devices

Save Bluetooth® devices to Paired devices list. Up to 10 can be saved. Enter same Authorization Code on both handset and device.

Activate Bluetooth® on device beforehand.

1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Search for devices*



2 **Select Search new devices field**






- If Bluetooth® is *Off*, Choose *Yes*.

3 **Detected devices are listed, select device to register**

4 **Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) →  (OK)**


5 **Enter same Authorization Code on device within 30 seconds**

- After the target device is connected to the handset, look up or get the data stored in that device.

- Authorization Code is a 4- to 16-digit password required for transmissions between Bluetooth® devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter specified Authorization Code. Authorization Code entry is not required for registered devices.
- If authorization fails, a confirmation appears. Choose *Yes* and repeat from step 4.
- If 10 paired devices are already registered, oldest is deleted to make room for the new one. If all are authenticated, memory full confirmation appears.
- Paired Devices Indicators
 -  : Personal Computer
 -  : Mobile Phone
 -  : Others
 -  : Printer
 -  : Handsfree Device/Headset
- If a Bluetooth® connection request appears, choose *Yes* and enter specified Authorization Code within 30 seconds. For paired devices, choose *Yes* to establish connection without Authorization Code.

Browsing Connected Device Files

Access connected device's shared folders or files. Import or delete files from the other device.

1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices*

2 Select device



3 Approve access on source device

Sending Data

Sending One by One

1 Select file and send

■ **From Data Folder, Phonebook, Bookmarks, Tasks**

In list,  → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth* → Check data to send →  (Send) → when confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

■ **From schedule of Calendar**


In list, highlight an item →  → *Send* → *Via Bluetooth*


2 Select destination device

- Receiver accepts and transfer begins.
- If device is not registered, register it first.

• Some functions allow sending option from Details or Playback window.

Transferring All

1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Transfer all*

2 Select destination device → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

- If device is not registered, register it first.


3 *Phonebook, Calendar/Tasks, or Bookmarks*

- When Phonebook is selected to transfer image data, choose *Yes*.

Receiving Data

Receiving One by One

After sender approves connection, file transfer begins and received file is saved.

1  → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Bluetooth On/Off* → *On*

- Handset is set in Standby mode to receive data. Begin sending files from sender device.


2 Transfer confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

3 Received confirmation appears, choose *Yes*

- Save received pictogram files to *Pictures* or *My Pictograms*.

• Received folders are saved to *Other documents*.

Receiving All

- 1  → **Settings** → **Connectivity** → **Bluetooth** → **Bluetooth On/Off** → **On**

- Handset is set in Standby mode to receive data. Begin sending files from sender device.

- 2 **Connection confirmation appears, choose *Yes***



- 3 **Select a saving method**

■ To add new data

Add

■ To delete all to overwrite data


Overwrite → **Yes** → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)

- When receiving phonebook entries, all entries except Account Details are deleted. When receiving Account Details, all data except the phone number is overwritten.
- Press  (Cancel) to cancel the reception.
- Press  to terminate data reception.

A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphones to listen to music.


- 1 **Activate Media Player**

- 2  → **Transfer to A/V headset**

- 3 **Select destination device**

- When no device is registered, search and register new device.

• To switch sound output from headphone to handset while playing music or movie, press

 → **Phone**.









Advanced

Advanced Settings P.11-11

- Searching Devices by Type
- Canceling Connecting Device
- Viewing connected device
- Editing Name of Paired Device
- Authorizing Paired Device
- Deleting Connected Device
- Viewing Paired Device Details

Settings

- Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions ( P.12-21)
- Search for a new Bluetooth® device ( P.12-21)

- View folder on connected device ( P.12-21)
- Search/save from Bluetooth® devices ( P.12-21)
- Adjust Handsfree setting ( P.12-21)
- Set Secure mode ( P.12-21)
- Set Answering mode ( P.12-21)
- Edit handset name ( P.12-21)
- Confirm handset device address ( P.12-21)
- Confirm available Bluetooth® functions ( P.12-21)

USB Connection

Connect handset to a PC to transfer files between devices.

Handset supports USB 1.1.

Install Samsung New PC Studio and USB driver first. For installation instructions, PC operating environment, etc., access SAMSUNG website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/830download.html>).

USB Connection

The following operations are available:

- Transfer handset Data folder files by PC operation
- Import PC files and save to **Data Folder**
- Perform Packet Communications

Note

- To access to the Internet through PC or PDA connection (Mobile data communication), a large volume of packet communication is required in short period that will apply for high packet communication charge. Please pay attention on communication fee when using mobile data communication.

Memory Card Backup

Back up Phonebook entries, etc. to Memory Card (Package backup). Restore backed up items as required (Package restoration).

- Restore from Backup in case of accidental data loss.
- Backups are saved by type (transfer date is file name).
- Available Backup types
 - Phonebook
 - Calendar
 - Tasks
 - Content Key
 - Bookmarks





- Use Backup to save files, share information between Memory Card-compatible handsets, or move files to a newly purchased handset.

Backup Precautions





- Not available when battery is low.
- During backup or restoration, handset transmissions are not available (receiving is unavailable, too).
- Some files cannot be backed up. Some backed up files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- Backup may fail if handset/Memory Card memory is too low.
- Handset holds up to 200 Schedule/Tasks entries. When 200 entries are restored from Memory Card, a confirmation appears and excess is not saved.
- Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser bookmarks are backed up.
- If a backed up bookmark is large it may not be restorable.
- Some images set to Phonebook entries may not be transferred because of size.
- Backup data saved on Memory Card is not accessible on handset until restored from Memory Card.

- When backing up Content Keys, note the following:
 - Backup file can hold only one Content Key at a time. To backup another Content Key, a confirmation appears and the previous backup file is overwritten (To keep the previously backed up files, restore the Content Key to handset from Memory Card and then perform backup again).
 - Backing up a file containing a Content Key to Memory Card moves Content Key from handset to Memory Card making the file inaccessible.
 - Restoring a file with a Content Key to handset adds the Content Key to handset without overwriting any existing Content Keys on handset.

Backing Up to Memory Card



- 1  → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card*
- 2 *Backup* → *Yes*
- 3 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK)
- 4 *Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks*
- 5 **Confirmation appears, choose Yes**
 - Select  (Cancel) to cancel backup.
 - If Content Key backup file already exists, an overwrite confirmation appears. Press  (Yes) to overwrite the file.

Loading from Memory Card

- 1  → *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory card*
- 2 *Restore* → *Yes*
- 3 **Enter Phone Password** →  (OK)
- 4 *Phonebook, Calendar, Tasks, Contents keys, or Bookmarks*
- 5 **Select a file**
 - To delete backup file, press  (Delete) and choose *Yes*.
- 6 **Add or Overwrite**
 - Press  (Cancel) to cancel restoration.

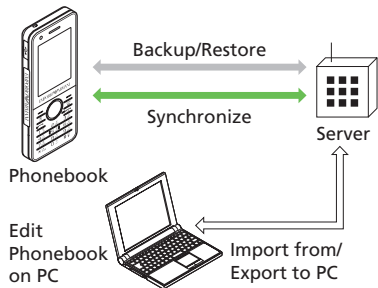
Advanced

Settings

- Backup Memory ( P.12-22)
- Restore Memory ( P.12-22)

S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)

Backup handset Phonebook entries on Server or synchronize handset Phonebook entries with SAB. Restore lost handset Phonebook entries from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate subscription (charged).
- If you should change handsets, select an SAB compatible handset to take over SAB entries.
- After an application, when Network Information is retrieved*, **Auto Sync** will be **On** automatically. After editing phonebook, backup will start automatically.
- Even after **Auto Sync** is set to **Off**, if Network Information is retrieved **Auto Sync** will be initialized and set to **On**.

- Confirm **Auto sync** is set to **Off** after canceling the service.
- * **Auto Sync – Sync mode** will be set to **Synchronize**. Auto Sync starts about 10 minutes after editing phonebook.

Note

- Packet Communication fees apply to connections between handset and SAB (Backup, Restore, or Synchronize).
- The following items cannot be synchronized with SAB; using Restore for these items will delete them from handset:
 - Picture
 - Ringtone settings, Vibration settings (Voice Call or Messages)
 - Blood type
 - Hobby
- Select backup/restore timing and sync mode carefully to avoid accidental deletion of entries.
 - Delete all handset entries then select **Synchronize, Sync from client** or **Backup up** to delete all SAB entries.
 - Delete all SAB entries then select **Synchronize, Sync from server** or **Restore** to delete all handset entries.

- If number of entry items savable on handset varies from SAB, synchronization will reflect lower number.
- When SAB service is canceled, Phonebook entries on Server are deleted.

Available synchronization modes are as follows.

Sync Mode	Description
Synchronize	Backs up handset entries and updates SAB. ¹
Sync from client	Backs up updated handset entries. ²
Sync from server	Downloads updated SAB entries to handset. ³
Backup	Deletes SAB entries and uploads handset entries. ⁴
Restore	Deletes all handset entries and downloads SAB entries to handset (up to 830SC limit) last edited first. ⁵

- 1 If handset Phonebook entry and SAB entry item are both updated, SAB entry item takes priority.
- 2 Phonebook update information on Server is not applied to the one on handset.
- 3 Phonebook update information of handset is not applied to the one on Server.
- 4 Be careful that all Phonebook entries on Server are deleted.
- 5 Be careful that all Phonebook entries of handset are deleted.

- **Slow sync** is performed regardless of Sync mode setting when using SAB for the first time or the last sync was not completed correctly by canceling, etc. **Slow sync** works the same way as **Synchronize**. View synchronization type in Sync log to see if **Slow sync** was performed.

Synchronizing Phonebook

Connect to Phonebook managed on Server and synchronize it with handset Phonebook entries.

- 1 → **Phonebook** → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → **Start sync**
- 2 **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)
- 3 **Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Backup, or Restore** → **Yes** → (OK)

Note

- Starting synchronization connects to network. Packet Communication charges apply. Network connection is automatically disconnected when the synchronization ends.

Synchronizing Phonebook Automatically

Setting **Auto sync** to **On** requires Set frequency and Sync mode settings.

Setting Auto Sync

- 1 → **Phonebook** → **S! Addressbook Back-up** → **Auto sync settings** → **Enter Phone Password** → (OK)
- 2 **On/Off** → **On** → (OK)
- 3 **Set frequency**
 - **To back up once a month**
Every month → Enter date → Enter time
 - **To back up once a week**
Every week → Select day of the week → Enter time
 - **To back up 10 minutes after editing Phonebook entries**
Every editing (after 10 min)
- 5 **Sync mode**

- 6 **Synchronize, Sync from client, Sync from server, Backup, or Restore** → (OK)

- To cancel **Auto Sync**, set **Off** under **On/Off** in Step 2.

Advanced

 **Advanced Settings**  P.11-12

Advanced Settings

Bluetooth® Settings

Searching Devices by Type

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Search for devices* → Highlight Search new devices field → ☒ → *Search setting* → Select search method

- Available items are *All*, *Headset*, *Mobile phone*, *PC/PDA*, *Printer* or *Device address*. When selecting *Device address*, enter an address.

Canceling Connecting Device

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight a connected device → ☒ → *Disconnect*

Viewing connected device

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight device to view → ☒ → *Browser device* → Authenticate connection on device

Acquiring Connected Device Data

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight device to view → ☒ → *Browser device* → Authenticate connection on device

To acquire a file

Select a file location → Highlight a file to get → ● (Get)

To acquire multiple files

Select a file location → ☒ → *Get* → *Multiple* → Check a file to get → ☒ (Get)

To acquire all files

Select a file location → ☒ → *Get* → *All*

To acquire a folder

Highlight folder to get → ☒ → *Get*

Deleting Data on Connected Device

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight device to view → ☒ → *Browser device* → Authenticate connection on device → Select a file location

To delete a file

Highlight a file to delete → ☒ → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple files

Highlight a file to delete → ☒ → *Delete* → *Multiple* → *Yes* → Check files to delete → ☒ (Delete)

To delete all files

Highlight a file to delete → ☒ → *Delete* → *All* → *Yes*

Editing Name of Paired Device

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight device for device name change → ☒ → *Rename* → Edit device name

Authorizing Paired Device

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight device for authentication setting → ☒ → *Authorize device* or *Unauthorize device*

- After *Authorize device* is set, the setting changes to *Unauthorized device*.

Deleting Connected Device

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices*

To delete an item

Highlight a device name to delete → ☒ → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete all items

☒ → *Delete* → *All* → Enter phone Password → ● (OK) → *Yes*

Viewing Paired Device Details

● → *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Paired devices* → Highlight device to confirm → ☒ → *Device details*

S! Addressbook Back-up

Viewing S! Addressbook Back-up History

→ *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook Back-up*
→ *Sync log* → Select a log


Deleting S! Addressbook Back-up History

→ *Phonebook* → *S! Addressbook Back-up*
→ *Sync log*

■ To delete an item

Highlight a log to delete →  (Delete) →
Yes

■ To delete all items

 (Delete all) → Enter Phone Password →
 (OK) → *Yes*


Handset Customization



Messaging Settings	12-2
Custom Mail Address	12-2
S! Mail & SMS	12-2
S! Mail	12-4
SMS	12-5
Internet Settings	12-6
Yahoo! Keitai	12-6
PC Site Browser	12-7
Media Player Settings	12-8
Music	12-8
Movie	12-8
Camera Settings	12-9
Camera & Video Camera	12-9
Photo	12-9
Video	12-10
Phonebook Settings	12-10
Sounds & Vibrator & External Light Settings	12-10
Sounds & Vibrator	12-10
External Light	12-11
Display Settings	12-12
Phone Settings	12-13
Handset Setting	12-13
Security Settings	12-15
Call Settings	12-16
Manner Mode Settings	12-20
Connectivity Settings	12-21
Bluetooth®	12-21
Network	12-22
Memory Settings	12-22

Messaging Settings

Custom Mail Address






Customize or change handset mail address	 → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Custom mail address</i> → Follow onscreen instructions <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Change mail account name (alphanumerics before @). Random alphanumerics set by default.
--	---

S! Mail & SMS

Start Here


 → *Settings* → *Universal settings*

Change font size Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → Select an item
Change scroll unit Default Single line	<i>Scroll unit</i> → Select an item
Request or cancel Delivery Report Default Off	<i>Delivery report</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">● <i>On</i>: Receive a message confirming successful delivery of a sent message.
Insert or hide Signature Default Off	<i>Signature</i> → <i>Auto insert</i> → Select an item
Edit Signature	<i>Signature</i> → <i>Edit</i> → Enter signature
Set or cancel Auto Delete for received messages when Received memory is full Default On (Auto delete)	<i>Auto delete</i> → <i>Received msg.</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Set if messages are automatically deleted when memory space of <i>Received messages</i> is full. <p><i>On (Auto delete)</i>: Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i>, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.</p> <p><i>Off</i>: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.</p>
Set or cancel Auto Delete for sent messages when Sent memory is full Default On (Auto delete)	<i>Auto delete</i> → <i>Sent msg.</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Set whether to delete messages automatically when memory space of <i>Sent msg.</i> or <i>Unsent msg.</i> is full. <p><i>On (Auto delete)</i>: Unprotected messages are automatically deleted oldest first to make room for new ones. If <i>Auto delete</i> is <i>Off</i> or Unsent is full, memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.</p> <p><i>Off</i>: Memory full confirmation appears. Delete messages and retry.</p>



Show or hide transmission progress bar	Default Show	<i>Sending progress settings</i> → <i>Sending progress</i> → Select an item
Always show or hide send result (progress bar hidden)	Default With notice	<i>Sending progress settings</i> → <i>Sending result notice</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Sending result notice</i> is only selectable when <i>Sending progress</i> is set to Do not show.
Set received message notice content or hide notice	Default Sender	<i>Message notice</i> → <i>View setting</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Received message notice scrolls above active function windows.
Select secret folder message notice setting	Default Show	<i>Message notice</i> → <i>Secret folder</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not show: Incoming message notice window for messages sorted to secret folders or <i>Message notice</i> does not appear.
Change message list view	Default 2 line	<i>Message list view</i> → Select an item
Change received message view	Default Folder view	<i>Received msg. view</i> → Select an item
Change sent message view	Default Folder view	<i>Sent msg. view</i> → Select an item
Adjust 3D Pictogram auto play setting		<i>3D pictograms</i> → <i>3D Picto. Auto play</i> → Select an item <i>Always</i> : Show 3D Pictogram for all messages <i>Only unread</i> : Show 3D Pictogram for unread messages only <i>Disable</i> : Hide 3D Pictogram <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The first time a received message is viewed <i>3D Picto., Auto Play</i> confirmation appears.
Select 3D Pictogram color settings	Default Pattern 1	<i>3D pictograms</i> → <i>Color settings</i> → Use  to change patterns →  (Select) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In <i>Color settings</i>, press  (Preview) for current settings.
Select 3D Pictogram display speed	Default Standard	<i>3D pictograms</i> → <i>Display speed</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In <i>Display speed</i>, press  (Preview) for current settings.

S! Mail

Start Here

 → *Settings* → *S! Mail settings*

Set message sending priority	Default Normal	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Priority</i> → Select an item
Set sent message Mail Service Center expiry	Default Maximum	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Expiry time</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When the expiry time has elapsed, S! Mails are automatically deleted from Mail Server.
Set time to send a message via Mail Service Center	Default Immediately	<i>Sending options</i> → <i>Delivery time</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set time has elapsed, Mail Service Center sends S! Mail message.
Set S! Mail receiving options	Default Auto download	<i>Receiving options</i> → <i>Home auto settings</i> → Select an item <i>Auto download</i> : Receive S! Mail messages automatically. <i>From number only</i> : Receive only S! Mail messages sent by a phone number. <i>Manual retrieval</i> : Receive only S! Mail reception notification.
Set S! Mail receiving options during roaming	Default Auto download	<i>Receiving options</i> → <i>Roaming auto settings</i> → Select an item <i>Auto download</i> : Receive S! Mail messages automatically. <i>Manual retrieval</i> : Receive only S! Mail reception notification. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you set <i>Auto download</i>, an entire message including any attachments will be automatically downloaded, resulting in high Packet Communication charges for your messaging overseas.
Select reply setting	Default Off	<i>Reply settings</i> → Select an item <i>On</i> : Replies to sent messages are automatically addressed to " <i>Reply to</i> " address <i>Off</i> : Replies to sent messages are addressed to handset number/mail address <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set address that appears in To: field of replies to messages sent from handset.
Set "reply to" address		" <i>Reply to</i> " address → Enter an item → Enter address
Show or hide emotion in received Feeling Mail Notification	Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Idle screen Info.</i> → Select an item
Link External Light to incoming Feeling Mail	Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>External light</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item
Link External Light color to incoming Feeling Mail	Default Happy/Glad: Red, OK/Good: Green, Sad/Sorry: Blue, NG/Bad: Blue, Important/Notice: Red	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>External light</i> → <i>Light Color</i> → Select a feeling → Select a color
Link Vibration to incoming Feeling Mail	Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Vibration pattern</i> → Select an item


Set whether to sound handset when Feeling Mail arrives	Default On	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item
Linking Ringtone to incoming Feeling Mail Default Happy/Glad: Armani_Hollywood Cocktail.mp4, OK/Good: Armani_Blue Steel.mp4, Sad/Sorry: Armani_Easy Melody.mp4, NG/Bad: Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4, Important/Notice: Stardust.mp4		<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Assign tone</i> → Select a feeling → Select a save location → Highlight a Ringtone →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set Feeling Mail ringtone duration	Default 5 seconds	<i>Link to feeling</i> → <i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Duration</i> → Enter time
Set attached image appearance	Default Normal	<i>Picture appearance</i> → Select an item
Set attached image auto playback	Default On	<i>Auto play file</i> → <i>Picture</i> → Select an item
Set attached sound auto playback	Default Off	<i>Auto play file</i> → <i>Sound</i> → Select an item

SMS

Start Here



→ *Settings* → *SMS settings*

Set Mail Service Center message expiry time	Default None	<i>Expiry time</i> → Select an item • Upon expiry Mail Service Center SMS messages are automatically deleted.
Set Message Center Number	Default Setting 1 +819066519300	<i>Message center</i> → Select an item
Edit Message Center Number	Default +819066519300	<i>Message center</i> → Highlight text to edit →  (Edit) → Edit Message Center number
Change character code	Default Unicode	<i>Char-code</i> → Select an item

Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here



→ Yahoo! Keitai → Yahoo! Keitai browser settings

Change page font size	Default Standard	Font size → Select an item
Set page scroll unit	Default Single line	Scroll unit → Select an item
Show or hide page images	Default On	Downloads → Display image → Select an item • Select Off to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds	Default On	Downloads → Play sounds → Select an item • Select Off to help reduce download time.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		Memory manager → Select an item → Yes
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default On	Security → Manufacture number → Select an item • On : Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer	Default Send	Security → Send referer → Select an item
Select Cookie setting	Default Enabled	Security → Cookies → Select an item
Select Script setting	Default Ask NW access	Security → Script → Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate		Security → Root certificates → Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period	Default Per browsing	Security → Certificate retention → Select an item
Initialize Browser		Initialized browser → Enter Phone Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → Yes
Reset settings		Reset settings → Enter Phone Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → Yes

PC Site Browser

Start Here


→ *Yahoo! Keitai* → *PC site browser* →
PC site browser settings




Change page font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → Select an item
Set page scroll unit	Default Single line	<i>Scroll unit</i> → Select an item
Show or hide page images	Default On	<i>Downloads</i> → <i>Display image</i> → Select an item ● Select <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Play or mute page sounds	Default On	<i>Downloads</i> → <i>Play sounds</i> → Select an item ● Select <i>Off</i> to help reduce download time.
Delete cache/Cookie/certificates		<i>Memory manager</i> → Select an item → <i>Yes</i>
Show or hide Manufacture Number	Default On	<i>Security</i> → <i>Manufacture number</i> → Select an item ● <i>On</i> : Handset automatically sends Manufacture Number to websites upon request as user ID.
Send or hide Referer	Default Send	<i>Security</i> → <i>Send referer</i> → Select an item
Select Cookie setting	Default Enabled	<i>Security</i> → <i>Cookies</i> → Select an item
Select Script setting	Default On	<i>Security</i> → <i>Script</i> → Select an item
Confirm Root Certificate		<i>Security</i> → <i>Root certificates</i> → Select a certificate
Set Certificate retention period	Default Per browsing	<i>Security</i> → <i>Certificate retention</i> → Select an item
Show or hide warning	Default Activate PC site browser: On, Switch to Yahoo! Keitai: On	<i>Warning messages</i> → <i>Active PC site browser</i> or <i>Switch to Yahoo! Keitai</i> → Select an item ● Show or hide PC Site Browser activation, or Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser switching warning.
Initialize Browser		<i>Initialized browser</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Reset settings		<i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>

Media Player Settings

Music


Start Here




 → *Media Player* → *Settings* → *Music*

Set Repeat mode	Default All	<i>Repeat mode</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Play a single track repeatedly, all music, or all files in playlist randomly repeatedly.
Adjust Tone volume level	Default 7	<i>Tone volume</i> → Adjust volume with  →  (Save)
Set Music sub folders	Default Recent music, Most played music, Artist	<i>Music menu</i> → Check folder to open →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Select folders to appear in <i>Music</i>.

Movie

Start Here

 → *Media Player* → *Settings* → *Movie*

Set Repeat mode	Default All	<i>Repeat mode</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Play a single file repeatedly, all videos, or all files in playlist repeatedly.
Adjust Tone volume level	Default 7	<i>Tone volume</i> → Adjust volume with  →  (Save)
Set Backlight	Default Always On	<i>Backlight</i> → Select an item
Set Video sub folders	Default Recent movie, Most played movie	<i>Movie menu</i> → Check folder to open →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Select folders to appear in <i>Movie</i>.
Show or hide Video thumbnails	Default On	<i>Movie thumbnail display</i> → Select an item
Access or ignore linked information	Default On	<i>Web link</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none">● On: After playing a file with linked info, access confirmation appears.

Camera Settings

Camera & Video Camera

Start Here

 → *Camera* → *Take photo/Record video* →  → Highlight  → *Settings* → *General* tab

Show or hide Indicators	Default On	<i>Indicators</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>On</i>: Indicator icon appears.
Set Auto-focus	Default On	<i>Auto focus</i> → Select an item
Activate or cancel Auto Save	Default Off	<i>Auto Save</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>On</i>: Images or video is automatically saved after capturing or recording. • <i>Off</i>: Save image or video each time capturing or recording.
Show or hide menu item guidance	Default On	<i>Help</i> → Select an icon <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>On</i>: Guidance information appears for selected menu item.

Photo

Start Here

 → *Camera* → *Take photo/Record video* →  → Highlight  → *Settings* → *Photo* tab

Select Quality	Default Normal	<i>Quality</i> → Select an item
Set ISO	Default Auto	<i>ISO</i> → Select an item
Set Exposure metering	Default Center-Weight	<i>Exposure metering</i> → Select an item
Set save location when Memory Card is inserted	Default Phone	<i>Save to</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When image size is set to 320 × 240, <i>Digital Camera</i> is unselectable. • Memory Card must be inserted to select it as save location. • If Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to <i>Phone</i>.
Show or hide Guideline	Default Off	<i>Guideline</i> → Select an item
Set Shutter sound	Default Pattern1	<i>Shutter sound</i> → Select an item

Video

Start Here

 → *Camera* → *Take photo/Record video* →  → Highlight  → *Settings* → *Video* tab

Select Quality

Default Economy

Quality → Select an item

- When *For S! Mail* is set, quality is automatically set to *Economy*.

Set save location

Default Phone

Save to → Select an item

- When Memory Card is not inserted, images are automatically saved to *Phone*.

Phonebook Settings

Start Here

 → *Phonebook* → *Settings*

Select Phonebook Save Location

Default Phone

Save settings → Select an item

- *Ask each time*: A confirmation appears each time a new entry is saved.

Change Phonebook preference (Phone/USIM)

Default Phone

Change view → Select an item

Change Search Method

Default A-ka-sa-ta-na

Search method → Select an item

Backup Phonebook entries

Backup → Select an item → *Yes*

Change Phonebook font size


Default Standard

Font size → Select an item

Sounds & Vibrator & External Light Settings

Sounds & Vibrator




Start Here








 → *Settings* → *Sounds & Alerts*

Adjust Volume

Default Level 3

Volume → Select an item → Adjust volume with  →  (Play) →  (Select)

- If *Phone sounds* is selected, playback is unavailable.
- If *Ringtone reducer* (P.12-20) is *On*, ringtone volume is reduced to Level 4 for the first two seconds, regardless of Ringtone volume set for Voice/Video Call.
- Use / to adjust ringtone volume while handset rings.
- To mute Voice/Video Call or Message tones, set *Volume* and *Vibration* to *00* and *Off* respectively.  appears.

Set Ringtone for Voice Call Default Armani_Night Effect.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Voice call</i> → Select save location for a file → Highlight a file →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set Ringtone other than Voice Call Default Message: Armani Alert_Charme.mp4, Missed call notification/Delivery report: Armani_Eagle Fly.mp4	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Message/Missed call notification/Delivery report</i> → <i>Assign tone</i> → Select save location for a file → Highlight a file →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set Ringtone Duration other than Voice Call Default 5 Seconds	<i>Ringtone</i> → <i>Message/Missed call notification/Delivery report</i> → <i>Duration</i> → Enter duration
Set Vibration Default Off	<i>Vibration</i> → Select an item → Highlight a pattern →  (Play) →  (Select)
Set Keypad tones Default Off	<i>Phone sounds</i> → <i>Keypad tones</i> → Select an item
Set system sounds Default Several tones on	<i>Phone sounds</i> → <i>System sounds</i> → Check items to set →  (Save)

• Open *Sounds & Alerts* in *Settings* to change sounds for Normal mode. Settings cannot be changed for other modes.

External Light

Start Here



→ *Settings* → *Sounds & Alerts* → *External light*

Illuminate External Light for incoming transmissions etc. Default On	<i>Incoming</i> → Select an item → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item
Set External Light color for incoming transmissions, etc. Default Green	<i>Incoming</i> → Select an item → <i>Color</i> → Select color
Illuminate External Light for missed call, etc. Default On	<i>Notification</i> → Select an item → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item
Set External Light color for missed calls Default Missed call/Missed call notification: Blue, Message/Delivery report: Green, Answering machine/Missed alarm*: Red	<i>Notification</i> → Select an item → <i>Color</i> → Select color














* The setting is used for the light to notify you of missed schedules (ⓘP.8-3) or tasks (ⓘP.8-7) (Note that the setting is not used for a normal alarm (ⓘP.8-4) or Schedule/Tasks alarm).

Display Settings

Start Here

● → Settings → Display settings


Change Wallpaper	Default Preset pictures	<i>Wallpaper</i> → Select save location for a file → Select a file → ● (Set)
Change Main Menu settings	Default V-shaped	<i>Main menu style</i> → Select a style → Use ⬅️ to select color to set → ● (Select)
Set Standby Display appearance	Default Off	<p><i>Clock/Calendar</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dual clock: 2 clocks appear in Standby. To set display style, <i>Clock style</i> → Use ⬅️ to select a style. ● Local time set in <i>Date & Time of Phone settings</i> appears on top of Dual clock. To set clock below it, <i>Dual clock</i> → <i>Secondary clock</i> → Highlight Time zone field → Use ⬅️ to specify an area → ● (OK). ● To set daylight saving in <i>Daylight saving</i> under <i>Dual clock</i>, highlight <i>Daylight saving</i> and check it → press <input type="checkbox"/> (OK).
Set text size in Yahoo! Keitai pages	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → Select an item
Set text size in PC site browser	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>PC site browser</i> → Select an item
Change Phonebook font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Phonebook</i> → Select an item
Change font size in text entry window	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Editor</i> → Select an item
Change Message text font size	Default Standard	<i>Font size</i> → <i>Messages</i> → Select an item
Adjust Display brightness	Default Automatic: On	<p><i>Light</i> → <i>Backlight</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Highlight Automatic field → Use ⬅️ to select an item → ● (OK)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When <i>Automatic</i> is set to Off, Display becomes dim. ● When <i>Automatic</i> is set to Off, use 🔍 to highlight Level field → Use ⬅️ to adjust brightness → ● (OK).
Set Backlight time	Default On: 15 seconds, Dim: 15 seconds	<p><i>Light</i> → <i>Backlight</i> → <i>Backlight time</i> → Select On field → Select time → Select Dim field → Select time → <input type="checkbox"/> (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When <i>Backlight time</i> is set to <i>Off</i>, Display becomes dim. ● Display becomes dimmer when set time in <i>Backlight time</i> elapses and turns off when set time in Dim elapses.
Set External light illumination for Backlight	Default On	<i>Light</i> → <i>External light</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item





Adjust External light brightness	Default 1	<i>Light</i> → <i>External light</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Use  to adjust brightness →  (OK)
Adjust External light color	Default Blue	<i>Light</i> → <i>External light</i> → <i>Color</i> → Select color
Set Dialling window font type	Default Armani Style	<i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font type</i> → Use  to change font type →  (OK)
Set Dialling window font size	Default Standard	<i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font size</i> → Use  to change font size →  (OK) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Font type</i> is set to other than <i>Normal</i>, this setting is unselectable.
Set Dialling window font color	Default Basic	<i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Font color</i> → Use  to change font color →  (OK) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Font type</i> is set to other than <i>Normal</i>, this setting is unselectable. For <i>Monochrome</i>, press  to highlight Color field → Use  to change color → Press  (OK).
Set Dialling window background color		<i>Dialling display</i> → <i>Background color</i> → Use  to change color →  (OK) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Font type</i> is set to other than <i>Normal</i>, this setting is unselectable.
Set Operator name	Default Off	<i>Operator name</i> → Select an item












Phone Settings


Handset Setting

Start Here

 → *Settings* → *Phone settings*

Change user interface language	Default 日本語	<i>言語選択</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>中文</i> (Chinese) and <i>Português</i> (Portuguese) only support menu display in those languages. Entering characters or displaying received messages in those languages are not supported.
Set Time zone updating	Default Prompt first	<i>Date & Time</i> → Select Time zone updating field → Select an item →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Automatic</i>: A confirmation message for rebooting appears. Choose <i>Yes</i> to reboot handset. <i>Time zone updating</i> is disabled even when the setting is changed.
Change Home time zone	Default GMT+09:00	<i>Date & Time</i> → Select Home zone field → Use  to change target area →  (Select) →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select date and time zone closest to you locality. Complete this setting before selecting <i>Dual clock</i>.





















Activate or cancel Daylight savings time adjustment Default Unchecked	<i>Date & Time</i> → Select Home zone field → Highlight and check <i>Daylight saving</i> →  (OK) →  (Save)
Set time	<i>Date & Time</i> → Highlight Time field → Enter time →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some functions are disabled when time is not set.
Set AM/PM (when Time format is set to 12H)	<i>Date & Time</i> → Highlight <i>AM</i> or <i>PM</i> in Time field → Use  to change settings →  (Save)
Set date	<i>Date & Time</i> → Highlight Date field → Enter date →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some functions are disabled until date is set.
Change Time format Default 24H	<i>Date & Time</i> → Select Time format field → Select an item →  (Save)
Change Date format Default YYYY/MM/DD	<i>Date & Time</i> → Highlight Date format field → Select an item →  (Save)
Save entries to User's Dictionary	<i>User's dictionary</i> → <i>New entry</i> → Select Word field → Enter word or sentence → Select Reading filed → Enter reading →  (Save)
Edit User's Dictionary entries	<i>User's dictionary</i> → <i>Edit entry</i> → Select content to edit → Edit phrase or reading →  (Save)
Delete User's Dictionary entries	<i>User's dictionary</i> → <i>Delete all</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Reset entry history to default	<i>User's dictionary</i> → <i>Reset learning</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Previous Kanji conversions appear first for predicted/conversion alternatives. This action clears conversion history.
Activating or cancel Auto keypad lock Default Off	<i>Auto keypad lock</i> → Select an item
Activate or cancel Simple Search Default Off	<i>Simple search</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On:</i> In Standby, press keys assigned to characters used in Phonebook entry Readings.
Set Side Keys to activate Reject Call or mute ringer Default Silence	<i>Side key</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set operation when  or  is pressed for 1+ seconds during incoming transmission.
Set Any Key answer Default Off	<i>Any key answer</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>On:</i> Press any keys except , , , , , and  to answer a call.

Set Keypad Light illumination mode	Default Automatic	<p><i>Keypad light</i> → Select an item</p> <p><i>Normal mode:</i> Keypad Light illuminates for Backlight Time duration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>Saving mode</i> is set, select Starting time field → Enter time → Select Ending time field → Enter time → Press  (Save). • <i>Saving mode:</i> Keypad light turns off for set duration.
------------------------------------	--------------------------	--

Security Settings

Start Here

 → *Settings* → *Security*

Activate or cancel Phone Lock	Default Off	<i>Phone lock</i> → Select an item → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Activate or cancel Password Lock	Default Off	<i>Password lock</i> → Select an item → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Activate or cancel USIM Lock	Default Off	<i>USIM lock</i> → Select an item → Enter USIM password (4 to 8 digits) →  (OK) → Enter USIM password again as required →  (OK)
Activate or cancel Application Lock	Default Unlock all	<i>Application lock</i> → Check an item to lock →  (Save) → Enter Phone Password →  (OK)
Activate or cancel Secret mode	Default Hide	<i>Secret mode</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Select an item
Create or cancel Secret folders in Data Folder	Default Hide	<i>Secret data folder</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → Select an item
Restore handset to defaults		<i>Reset</i> → <i>All reset</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Restore Settings to default values		<i>Reset</i> → <i>Reset settings</i> → Enter Phone Password →  (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Activate or cancel PIN Certification	Default Off	<i>PIN certification</i> → Select an item → Enter PIN →  (OK)
Change PIN		<i>Change PIN</i> → Enter current PIN →  (OK) → Enter new PIN →  (OK) → Enter new PIN again →  (OK)
Change PIN2		<i>Change PIN2</i> → Enter current PIN2 →  (OK) → Enter new PIN2 →  (OK) → Enter new PIN2 again →  (OK)
Change Phone Password	Default 9999	<i>Change password</i> → Enter current password →  (OK) → Enter new password →  (OK) → Enter new password again →  (OK)






Activate Mobile Tracker	Default Off	<i>Mobile tracker</i> → Enter Phone Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → Select Activation field → On → Select Recipients field → Select To field → Enter address → <input type="text"/> (Save) → Select Sender field → Enter sender name → <input type="text"/> (Save) → Confirm entries → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (Agree) or <input type="text"/> (Reject)
-------------------------	--------------------	--














Call Settings

Start Here




→ *Settings* → *Call settings*

Forward all calls to Voicemail (Handset does not ring)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail on</i> → <i>Always (0 sec.)</i>
Forward unanswered calls to Voicemail (specify ring time)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Voice mail on</i> → <i>No reply (5 to 30 sec.)</i> → Select an item
Activate and set Call Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Call forwarding on</i> → Select a setting → Select an item → Set number to forward <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When <i>No reply (5 to 30 sec.)</i> is selected, select duration time.
Cancel Voicemail/Call Forwarding	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Deactivate All</i> → <i>Yes</i>
Confirm current Voicemail/Call Forwarding settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Get status</i>
Listen to Voicemail message	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Voice mail/Call forwarding</i> → <i>Listen to voice mail</i> → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (Call)
Activate or cancel Call Waiting	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i>
Confirm current Call Waiting settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call waiting</i> → <i>Get status</i>
Set Outgoing Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Outgoing call</i> → Select an item → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> → Enter Network Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK)
Activate or cancel Incoming Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Incoming call</i> → Select an item → <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> → Enter Network Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK)
Cancel all Call Barring	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Cancel all barring</i> → Enter Network Password → <input checked="" type="radio"/> (OK) → <i>Yes</i>
Confirm current Call Barring settings	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Get status</i> → Select an item



Change Network Password		<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Call barring</i> → <i>Set security code</i> → Enter current Network Password in Old field → ● (OK) → Enter new Network Password in New field → ● (OK) → Enter the new Network Password again → ● (OK)
Set Missed Call Notification		<i>Optional services</i> → <i>Missed call notification</i> → ● (Call)
Switch Network Mode	Default Automatic	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select network</i> → Select an item ● If <i>Manual</i> is set, select from <i>3G/GSM</i> , <i>3G</i> or <i>GSM</i> .
Save International Code	Default 0046010	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>International code</i> → Enter Phone Password → ● (OK) → Enter an international code
Add/change/delete Country Number	Default 日本 (Japan), 韓国 (KOR), イギリス (GBR), イタリア (ITA), スイス (CHE), スペイン (ESP), ドイツ (DEU), ポルトガル (PRT), オランダ (NLD), フランス (FRA), モナコ (MCO), アメリカ合衆国 (USA), スウェーデン (SWE), オーストラリア (AUS), 中国 (CHN), 香港 (HKG), 台湾 (TWN)	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Country number</i> → Add, change, or delete item ● To add/change, highlight an item from Country code → ● (Change) → Select Country name field → Enter country name → Highlight Enter country code field → Enter country code → Press  (Save). ● To delete, highlight item →  (Delete) → Choose <i>Yes</i> .
Select network to access	Default Automatic	<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Automatic</i> or <i>Manual</i> ● When you set <i>Manual</i> , select a network.
Insert preferred network from list		<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Set preferred</i> → Move cursor to insertion position →  → <i>Insert</i> → <i>Network list</i> → Highlight a network → ● (Insert)
Add preferred network from list		<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Set preferred</i> →  → <i>Add</i> → <i>Network list</i> → Highlight a network to add → ● (Add) ● Network is added at the bottom of the list.
Delete preferred network from list		<i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Set preferred</i> → Highlight a network to delete →  → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Yes</i>

Add a new preferred network		<p><i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Add operator</i> → Enter country code → Enter Network code → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network is added at the top of the list. • To enter a new network name and insert or add it, follow the steps: <i>Optional services</i> → <i>International call</i> → <i>Select operator</i> → <i>Preferred network</i> → <i>Set preferred</i> →  → <i>Insert/Add</i> → <i>New Network</i> → Highlight <i>Enter country code</i> → Enter country code → Highlight <i>Enter network code</i> → Enter network code → Select <i>Enter network name</i> → Enter network name → Select <i>Select operator</i> → <i>GSM/3G</i> →  (Insert/Add)
Check Call Time/Cost		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>All calls</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To reset call time/cost,  (Reset) → Enter PIN2 → Select  (OK).
Check last Call Time/Cost		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Last call</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To reset last call time/cost, Select  (Reset).
Check Data Counter		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Data counter</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To reset sent/received data counter, Select  (Reset).
Show or hide Call Time/Cost after calls	Default Off	<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Show charge after call</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This function may not be available.
Change Call Cost Currency		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set currency</i> → Enter PIN2 →  (OK) → Select Price field → Enter rate to the yen → Select Currency field → Enter currency unit →  (Save)</p>
Set Call Cost Limit		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set max cost limit</i> →  (Edit) → Enter PIN2 →  (OK) → Select Upper limit after changing field → Enter upper limit →  (Save)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls can be made; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled. • When <i>Show charge after call</i> is not available, this function is also unavailable.
Cancel Call Cost Limit		<p><i>Call time & cost</i> → <i>Set max cost limit</i> →  (Release) → Enter PIN2 →  (OK)</p>
Activate or cancel Answering Machine	Default Off	<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Setting</i> → Select an item</p>
Set Answering Machine response time	Default 18seconds	<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Ringling duration</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If <i>Other (0-30secs)</i> is selected, enter time.


Play Answering Machine records		<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Recordings</i> → Highlight an item → (Play)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete one record, highlight it → (Delete) → Choose <i>Yes</i>. To delete all records, in the list window, press (Delete all) → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Choose <i>Yes</i>.
Set Answering Machine response language	Default 日本語	<p><i>Answering machine</i> → <i>Sound language</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (Play) to hear a message.
Accept or reject calls from specified phone numbers	Default Off	<p><i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Reject list</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a call from Reject list arrives, a caller hears a busy tone and call is not connected. <i>Rejected</i> appears in Standby. Press (View) to check missed call.
Create or edit Black List		<p><i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Reject list</i> → <i>Edit black list</i> → → <i>Add</i> → Select an item → Register phone number</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To edit registered phone numbers, select <i>Edit black list</i> → Highlight phone number → (Select) → Edit phone number → (OK) → (Save) To delete saved phone numbers, select <i>Edit black list</i> → Highlight phone number → → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Selected</i> or <i>All</i> → Choose <i>Yes</i>. When <i>All</i> is selected, enter Phone Password.
Accept or reject calls from unknown numbers	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Unknown</i> → Select an item
Accept or reject calls when number is withheld	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Withheld</i> → Select an item
Accept or reject calls from payphones	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Payphone</i> → Select an item
Accept or reject calls when number is unavailable	Default Off	<i>Reject incoming calls</i> → <i>Unavailable</i> → Select an item
Activate or cancel Offline mode	Default Off	<i>Offline</i> → Select an item
Show or hide your own number when calls		<p><i>Show my number</i> → <i>On/Off</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To check current status, select <i>Get status</i>.
Set handset to automatically redial busy numbers	Default Off	<p><i>Auto redial</i> → Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On: Handset automatically disconnects call and redials busy numbers. Auto redial repeats up to 10 times until (Cancel) or is pressed. If called party uses Call Forwarding or Voicemail, call is forwarded accordingly.

Activate or cancel automatic ringer reduction Default On	<i>Ringtone reducer</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When ringtone volume level is high, the volume level is reduced to Level 1 for the first four seconds, then returns to the set level.
Enable or disable calling via Earphone Microphone Default Earphone call: Off	<i>Earphone call</i> → <i>Earphone call activate</i> → Select an item → <i>Call number</i> → Select an item → Register phone number →  (Save) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On: Press Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. To change specified number, repeat setup operation, saving the new number.
Adjust Earpiece volume Default Level 3	<i>Hearing volume</i> → Use  to adjust volume →  (Select)

Manner Mode Settings

Switching Manner Mode	 → <i>Settings</i> → <i>Manner mode settings</i> → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To change settings for each mode, highlight a mode →  (Edit) → Set each item.
-----------------------	---

Connectivity Settings

Bluetooth®		Start Here	⦿ → Settings → Connectivity → Bluetooth
Activate or cancel Bluetooth® functions	Default Off	Bluetooth On/Off → Select an item	
Search for a new Bluetooth® device		Search for devices → Select Search new devices field → Device responds, select a device to register → Enter Authorization Code (4 to 16 digits) → ⦿ (OK) → Enter same code on device within 30 seconds	
View folder on connected device		Paired devices → Select a device → Authenticate connection on device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To receive viewing folder, highlight a folder to receive after connection authentication, press  and select <i>Get</i>. 	
Search/save from Bluetooth® devices	Default Show my phone	Bluetooth settings → My phone's visibility → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To search and save from other Bluetooth® devices, make handset visible. 	
Adjust Handsfree setting	Default Handsfree mode	Bluetooth settings → Handsfree → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings are as follows. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Private mode: Use Microphone for handset calls or handsfree device for device calls. Handsfree mode: Talk via handsfree device. 	
Set Secure mode	Default On	Bluetooth settings → Secure mode → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On: A confirmation appears before transfers. 	
Set Answering mode	Default Normal	Bluetooth settings → Answering mode → Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To set duration until receiving automatically, select Automatic, then select the number of seconds. 	
Edit handset name	Default 830SC	Bluetooth settings → My phone details → Highlight Bluetooth name field → ⦿ (Edit) → Edit name	
Confirm handset device address		Bluetooth settings → My phone details <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Address appears on Bluetooth address field. 	
Confirm available Bluetooth® functions		Bluetooth settings → Bluetooth services → Select an item	

Network

Start Here



→ Settings → Connectivity

Retrieve Network Information manually

Retrieve NW info → Yes or No

Memory Settings

Start Here



→ Settings → Memory settings

Check Memory Card details

Memory card → *Memory card details*

- Check Memory Card name, memory capacity, or remaining memory.

Format Memory Card

Memory card → *Format memory card* → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Yes

Rename Memory Card

Memory card → *Rename memory card* → Enter name

Backup Memory

Memory card → *Backup* → Yes → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Select an item → Yes

Restore Memory

Memory card → *Restore* → Yes → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Select an item → Select a file → *Add* or *Overwrite*

Confirm total or remaining Phone Memory

Phone memory → *Phone memory details*

- View Phone memory capacity or remaining memory.

Clear Phone Memory

Phone memory → *Clear phone memory* → Check an item to clear → (Delete) → Enter Phone Password → (OK) → Yes

Set Default Memory to Phone or Memory Card

Default Phone

Set default memory → Select an item

- With Memory Card inserted, select handset (Phone) or Memory Card. Available when saving S! Mail attachments, downloading files, receiving data via Bluetooth®, etc.
- When *Memory card* or *Always ask* is selected with no Memory Card inserted, files are automatically saved to handset.

View Memory status

Memory status → Select an item

- To delete viewed memory, press (Delete) (ⓘP.10-13 Deleting Registered/Saved Data).

Appendix



Troubleshooting	13-2
Software Update	13-5
Function List	13-6
Main Menu	13-6
Text Entry Key Assignments	13-8
Symbols List	13-9
Double-byte Symbols	13-9
Single-byte Symbols	13-9
Symbol Conversions	13-9
Pictograms	13-10
Memory List	13-11
Specifications	13-11
SoftBank 830SC	13-11
Battery	13-12
Index	13-13
Objective Index	13-18
Advanced Settings Index	13-20
Warranty & Service	13-21
Warranty	13-21
Repair Requests	13-21
Customer Service	13-22

Troubleshooting

■ Handset does not turn on

- ☑ Is battery empty?
 - ➔ Replace or charge battery.
- ☑ Is battery installed in handset?
 - ➔ Install battery correctly.

■ When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

- ☑ Is *PIN certification* set to *On*?
 - ➔ If *PIN certification* is *On*, enter PIN.

■ When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

- ☑ Is *USIM lock* set to *On*?
 - ➔ If *USIM lock* is *On*, enter USIM password.

■ Please insert USIM card, Incorrect USIM or USIM card failed appears when handset is turned on or executing a function

- ☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?
 - ➔ Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.
- ☑ Is USIM Card still being loaded?
 - ➔ Try again after a while.
- ☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?
 - ➔ Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.
- ☑ Is there debris on USIM Card IC chip?
 - ➔ Remove debris with a clean, dry cloth, and then install USIM Card correctly.

■ 圏外 or OUT appears and no calls can be made

- ☑ Handset is out-of-range.
 - ➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

■ Calls are interrupted or disconnected

- ☑ Does 圏外 or OUT appear?
 - ➔ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.
- ☑ Is battery empty?
 - ➔ Replace or charge battery.

■ Unable to make a call

- ☑ Is Call Barring set?
 - ➔ Deactivate Call Barring.
- ☑ Is *Offline mode* set to *On*? (☒ appears)
 - ➔ Set *Offline mode* to *Off* (☑P.1-14).

■ Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

- ☑ Is *Application lock* set?
 - ➔ Cancel *Application lock* (☑P.9-5).

■ Clicking noise is heard during a call

- ☑ Noise may be generated when signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

■ Unable to charge battery

- ☑ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into the conversion cable?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
- ☑ Is the conversion cable securely inserted into handset?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.
- ☑ Is AC Charger plug securely inserted?
 - ➔ Insert AC Charger plug securely.
- ☑ Is battery installed in handset?
 - ➔ Install battery correctly.
- ☑ Are handset terminals and AC Charger clean?
 - ➔ Clean contacts with a dry cotton swab.
- ☑ Was battery charged in ambient temperature below 5 °C or above 40 °C?
 - ➔ Charge battery in ambient temperature between 5 °C and 40 °C.
- ☑ Battery may need to be replaced.
 - ➔ Install a new battery.
- ☑ Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?
 - ➔ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

- ☑ Does handset or battery become very warm during charging?
 - ➔ If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After handset and battery are cool, retry charging.

■ Devices become hot

- ☑ During charging, AC Charger may heat up.
- ☑ Handset may heat up during charging/long calls.
 - ➔ If handset is safe to touch, heat level is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (☎P.13-22).

■ Battery drains quickly

- ☑ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.
 - ➔ Use handset in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (☎P.1-7).

■ Display flickers

- ☑ Is handset used near a fluorescent light?
 - ➔ Use handset as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

■ Display is dim or unlit

- ☑ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time until Display is dimmed or unlit can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time (☎P.12-12).

■ Unable to play music via speaker

- ☑ Is *Manner mode* set?
 - ➔ Cancel *Manner mode*.
- ☑ Is the stereo earphone or earphone microphone connected?
 - ➔ Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone or earphone microphone from handset.


■ Too many applications are already running. appears

- ☑ Too many functions are active.
 - ➔ Close some.

■ Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung New PC Studio

- ☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)
 - ➔ If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with data cable, installing the driver is required. Download USB Driver Installer from SAMSUNG website (<http://jp.samsungmobile.com/pc/lineup/830download.html>) and install the driver.
- ☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?
 - ➔ Set the connection method to **USB** or **Bluetooth** on the Connection Manager of Samsung New PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.
- ☑ Are Bluetooth® or PC USB connection port and Samsung New PC Studio the same?
 - ➔ Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung New PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

■ Phonebook entry, Message folder, schedule event in Calendar, or Tasks do not appear

- ☑ In **Security**, is **Secret mode** set to **Hide**?
 - ➔ In **Security**, set **Secret mode** to **Show** (☎P.9-5).
- ☑ Is **Secret** under each function set to **On**?
 - ➔ Press  in intended window → Select **Unlock temporarily**.

■ Sending message failed appears

- ☑ If send fails, error message and reason appear.
 - ➔ Confirm reason and try again.

■ Service not allowed appears

- ☑ Handset is outside 3G service area.
 - ➔ Send from within the service area.

■ Sending operation cannot be operated in offline mode appears

- ☑ In **Offline mode**, handset transmissions are disabled.
 - ➔ Set **Offline mode** to **Off** (☎P.1-14).

■ Storage space short by * * bytes. Edit data folder files? appears

- ☑ Handset memory is full.
 - ➔ Delete unnecessary files and try again.

■ Cannot download. File corrupt. appears

- ☑ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

■ Unable to call via Stereo Earphone Microphone or Bluetooth®


- ☑ Is **Earphone call** set to **Off**?
 - ➔ Even if **Earphone call** number is saved, if **Earphone call** is set to **Off** it will not be dialed. Set **Earphone call** to **On** (☎P.12-20).

Software Update

SoftBank releases firmware updates. Download as required. Choose *Update* or *Schedule update*.


1  → *Tools* → *Software update*

2  (Yes)

- Handset connects to network by pressing  (Yes).

3 Read Terms of Use and then *Agree*

- Read through Terms of Use before selecting *Agree*.

4 Enter Center Access Code (☎P.1-18) →  (OK) →

 (OK)

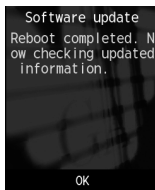
- Update result appears.

5 Select one from the following updating methods


To update immediately

Update now

- Update starts. When complete, handset powers off and restarts; Notification appears.




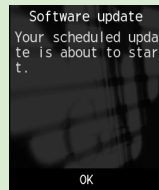
To schedule later update


Schedule update →  (Yes) →

Select schedule date → Select schedule time → Confirm schedule date & time →

 (OK)

- For procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Service.
- Confirming/downloading updates does not incur fees.
- At scheduled update time, message appears. Press  (OK) or wait ten seconds. Update will not start while handset is in use. When operation ends, a message window appears. However if operation does not end within ten minutes of scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.




- To cancel Schedule update, perform Steps 1 to 4, then select *Cancel schedule* and press  (Yes).

Note

- Charge battery beforehand; if low, update may fail.
- If Scheduled update time arrives while handset is out-of-range, Software Update is canceled.
- Remain within strong, stable signal conditions.
- Handset Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damage from lost information, etc.
- Handset transmissions are disabled during update.
- Update may take some time to complete.
- Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☎P.13-22).
- If updated handset fails to restart, remove and reinsert battery then power on. If this fails, call SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☎P.13-22).

Function List

Main Menu

To display the below items, press  in Standby.

Main Menu Item	Page
Messaging	
Received msg.	P.4-10, P.4-13
Create new	P.4-4
Retrieve new	P.4-23
Drafts	P.4-13, P.4-19
Templates	P.4-13, P.4-19
Sent msg.	P.4-13
Unsent msg.	P.4-13
Server mail	P.4-27
Create new SMS	P.4-7
Settings	P.12-2
Memory status	P.10-13
Yahoo! Keitai	
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3, P.5-4
History	P.5-3, P.5-4
PC site browser	P.5-4
Yahoo! Keitai browser settings	P.12-6

Main Menu Item	Page
Media Player	
Music	P.7-4
Movie	P.7-7
Settings	P.12-8
Calendar	P.8-3
Camera	
Take photo	P.6-6
Record video	P.6-11
Data Folder	
Pictures	P.10-2
My Pictograms	P.10-2
Ring songs · tones	P.10-2
Music	P.10-2
Videos	P.10-2
Graphic Mail templates	P.10-2
Other documents	P.10-2
Memory status	P.10-2
Tools	
Alarm	P.8-4
Calculator	P.8-5
Converter	P.8-6
World clock	P.8-7
Notepad	P.8-7
Tasks	P.8-7
Voice recorder	P.8-8
Stopwatch	P.8-9
Dictionary	P.8-11
Software update	P.13-5















Main Menu Item	Page
Phonebook	
Phonebook	P.2-17
Create new entry	P.2-15
Call log	P.3-10
Group settings	P.2-23
Account details	P.1-12
Speed dial	P.3-6
S! Addressbook Back-up	P.11-9
Settings	P.12-10
Memory status	P.12-22
Settings	
Sounds & Alerts	P.12-10
Display settings	P.12-12
Phone settings	P.12-13
Security	P.12-15
Call settings	P.12-16
Manner mode settings	P.12-20
Connectivity	P.12-21
Memory settings	P.12-22

Text Entry Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.

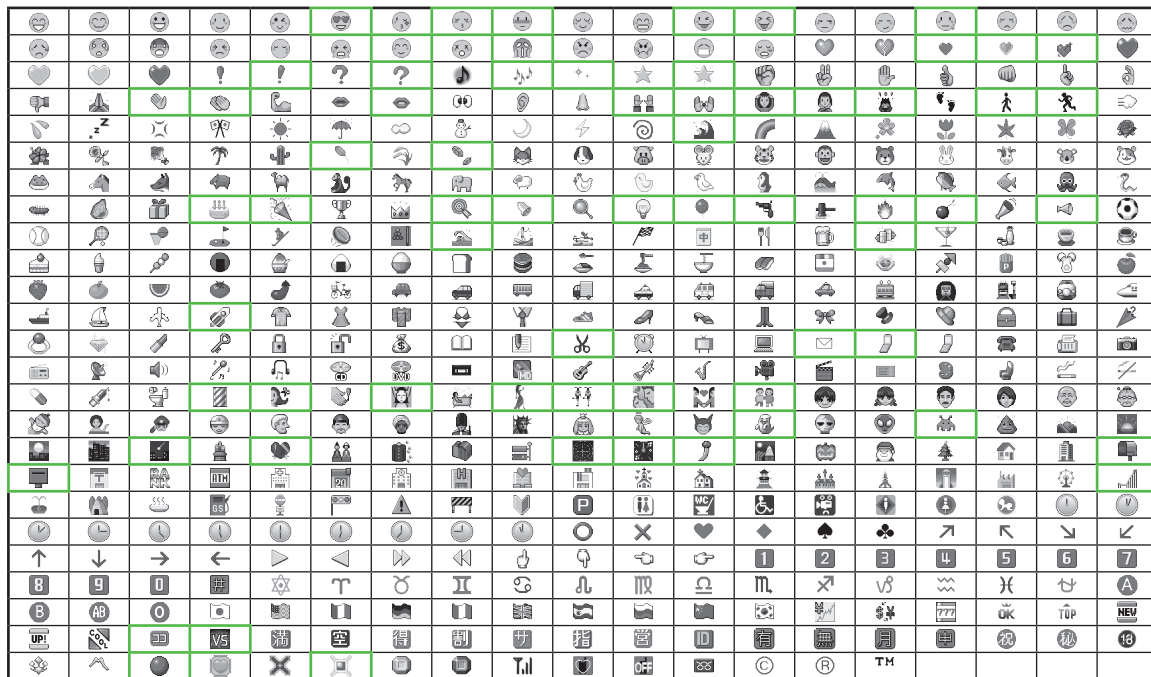
Press  to change text entry mode.

Press  to switch to Symbols,  to toggle Pictograms and Emoticons.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
	あいうえおあいうえお 1	アイウエオアイウエオ 1	.@-_:~^1	1
	かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2	ABCabc2	2
	さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3	DEFdef3	3
	たちつてと 4	タチツテト 4	GHghi4	4
	なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5	JKLjkl5	5
	はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6	MNOmno6	6
	まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7	PQRSpqrs7	7
	やゆよやゆよ 8	ヤユヨヤユヨ 8	TUVtuv8	8
	らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9	WXYZwxyz9	9
	わをん、。 - 0	ワヲン、。 - 0	„_! ? <Space> 0	0
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Add ° / ° to unfixed, convertible kana ● Toggle Pictograms, Emoticons 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Toggle Pictograms, Emoticons ● Toggle upper/lower-case (only before fixing and convertible character for entering alphabets) 		
	● Toggle Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols			
	● Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection			—
	● Change entry mode			

1 When double-byte, "--" cannot be used (" ~ " appears on Display).

Pictograms



- Pictograms with are animated.
- Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Memory List

S! Mail/ SMS (Phone memory)	Received messages	Up to 1000 messages or 5MB
	Drafts	Up to 20 messages or 1MB
	Sent messages	Up to 250 messages or 1MB
	Unsent	Up to 20 messages or 1MB
SMS	USIM card	Up to 10 messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 999 items (files/subfolders) per folder
	My Pictograms	
	Ring songs · tones	
	Music	
	Videos	
	Message templates	
	Other documents	

Specifications

Handset specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 830SC

Item	Specification
Weight	91 g*
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: 280 minutes (3G)*/240 minutes (GSM)*
Continuous Standby Time (Display off)	540 hours (3G)*/350 hours (GSM)*
Charging Time	AC Charger: 160 min.*
Dimensions (W x H x D)	47.4 x 114.9 x 12.0 mm *
Maximum Output	0.25 W

* Approximate value

- Handset with battery installed.
- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank Mobile under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving handset on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent handset operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.

- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	960 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	4.7 x 36.0 x 54.2 mm (without protruding parts)

Index

A

AC Charger	1-10
Account details	1-12
Reset	1-19
Alarms	8-4
All Reset	9-7
Answering Machine	3-7
Cancel	3-7
Delete records	3-8
Play records	3-8
Set	3-7
Any key answer	12-14
Application lock	9-5
Auto Keypad Lock	9-4
Auto redial	12-19

B

Battery	1-7
Inserting & Removing	1-8
Bluetooth®	11-3
Activate/Cancel	11-4
Address	12-21
Answering mode	12-21
Applicable profiles	11-3
Authentication Code	11-4
Bluetooth services	12-21
Connectivity	11-4

Delete paired devices	11-11
Device	11-5
Edit device name	12-21
Edit paired device name	11-11
Paired device	11-4
Paired Devices Icons	11-4
Print	10-10
Receive data	11-5
Search Devices	11-11
Secure mode	12-21
Send data	11-5
Visibility	12-21
Bookmark	5-7
Delete	5-15
Internet connection	5-7
Save	5-7
Send URL	5-14

C

Cache	5-2
Calculator	8-5
Calendar	8-3
Delete schedule	8-12
Save schedule	8-3, 8-11
Schedule	8-3
View schedule	8-4, 8-12
Call barring service	3-14, 3-18
Call forwarding service	3-14, 3-16
Call log	3-10
Check	3-10
Delete	3-10

Call time & cost

Check	3-11
Reset	3-11
Show charge after call	12-18

Call waiting service

Camera

Attach to message for sending still image	6-13
Attach to message for sending video	6-14
Capture video	6-11
Effects	6-12, 6-14
Frame shot	6-7
Multi shot	6-6
Night shot	6-7
Photo combination	6-7
Quick Play	6-8
Send a still image via Bluetooth®	6-13
Send video via Bluetooth®	6-14
Settings	12-9, 12-10
Shoot still image	6-3
Shortcut operations	6-5, 6-10
Timer	6-12, 6-14
Viewfinder	6-3, 6-9

Cancel PIN lock

Center Access Code

Change mode

Change PIN

Change PIN2

Charge Battery

Charger Port

Clear memory

Conference call service

Convert currency or unit

Copy item 1-20, 2-23
Country number 12-17

D

Data Folder 10-2
Dictionary 8-11
Display 1-4
 Backlight 12-12
 Brightness 12-12
 Clock/Calendar 12-12
 Dialing display 12-13
 Font size 12-13
 Main menu style 12-12
 Operator name 12-13
 Wallpaper 2-6
Download Content Key 7-9, 7-10

E

Earphone call 12-20
Emergency call 3-7
Emergency Location Report 3-7
External Device Port 1-4
External light 1-17

F

File 10-3, 10-4
 Copy 10-6
 Delete 10-6
 Details 10-10
 Icon 10-2, 10-3

Lock/Unlock 10-12
Rename 10-5
Set images as Wallpaper etc. 10-12
Set Ringtone 10-12
Sort 10-11

File Viewer 8-9
 Shortcut operations 8-10
Folder 10-4
 Copy 10-6
 Create 10-4
 Delete 10-6

G

Global Roaming 3-12

H

Hearing volume 3-5
History
 Delete 5-9, 5-11
 Internet connection 5-3, 5-4
 S! Addressbook Back-up 11-12
Hold incoming call 3-5

I

Icon
 Attached file 4-5
 Call Log Record 3-10
 Data Folder 10-2
 Device 11-4
 Display 1-4

File list 10-3
Message 4-11
Message list 4-10
Mode 1-15
Movie Window 7-6
Music Window 7-4
Schedule 8-3
Shooting mode (still image) 6-4
Shooting mode (video) 6-9

International Code 12-17

Internet 5-2

Internet page 5-2, 5-5
 Font size 5-9, 5-12

K

Key Lock 1-13

L

Language 12-13
Lock 9-3
 Functional lock 9-5
 Key Lock 1-13
 Phone Lock 9-3
 PIN 9-4
 USIM Lock 9-4

Log
 Call log 3-10

M

Mailbox	4-13	Action settings	4-19	Save to drafts	4-19, 4-22
Drafts	4-13	Add new folder	4-28	Send from Drafts	4-25
Received message	4-13	Change folder name	4-17	Send Graphic templates	4-8
Sent message	4-13	Create	4-4, 4-7	Sending options	4-20, 4-22
Templates	4-13	Create folder	4-16	Send text templates	4-8
Unsent message	4-13	Custom mail address	4-4	Send unsent messages	4-25
Make a call	3-4	Delete	4-15, 4-24	Sent message icon	4-11
Phonebook	2-17	Delete folder	4-28	Server mail	4-27
Make international calls	3-11, 3-21	Delete Graphic templates	4-15	Server mail memory	4-27
Manner mode	1-14	Delete messages in server	4-27	Set Secret	4-28
Media Player	7-2	Delete templates	4-15	SI Mail	4-2
Add to playlist	7-8, 7-10	Details	4-24	SMS	4-2
Adjust Tone volume	12-8	Draft message icon	4-11	Sort	4-25
Create playlist	7-8	Feeling settings	4-19	Templates	4-5
Download	7-3	Font size	4-24	Unsent message icon	4-11
Play music	7-4	Forward	4-12	View	4-8, 4-10
Play playlist	7-8	Forward messages in server	4-27	View Attachment	4-23
Play video	7-7	Graphic mail	4-6	Missed call	3-5
Repeat mode	12-8	Indicators for attached files	4-5	Mobile tracker	9-6
Settings	12-8	Lock/Unlock	4-14	Mode settings	1-15
Video resolution	7-11	Mail Server	4-10	Multi Selector	iii
Memory Card	10-7	Memory status	4-28	Mute	2-5, 3-20
Initialize	10-8	Message list view	4-24, 12-3		
Insert/Remove	10-8	Message notice	12-3		
Memory card backup	11-7	Move	4-16		
Memory Status	10-2, 10-9	Move SMS	4-25		
Menu Operations	iii	Received message icon	4-11	Network mode	3-12
Message	4-2	Receive server mail	4-27	Network Password	1-18
3D Pictogram display	4-19, 4-23, 4-24	Reply	4-12, 4-23	Change	3-19
3D Pictograms	4-9, 12-3	Retrieve all mails	4-27	Notepad	8-7
		Save attachment	4-16		
		Save Graphic as template	4-19		
		Save templates	4-27		

N

O

Offline mode 1-14

P

Password lock 9-4

PC Site Browser 5-4

Copy text 5-10

Details 5-11

Enter URL 5-4

Font size 12-12

Manufacture number 12-7

PC screen 5-12

Root certificates 12-7

Script 12-7

Search 5-11

Send URL 5-11

Phonebook 2-13

Copy 2-22

Create Message 2-21

Default number 2-23

Delete 2-18

Edit 2-23

Save 2-15

Search 2-17

Set Secret mode 2-20

Phone Lock 9-3

Phone Password 1-18, 9-3

Picture browser 10-3

PIN2 Code 1-19

PIN Certification 9-4

PIN Code 1-19, 9-4

PIN lock 9-4

Power On/Off 1-11

Preferred network 3-12

Print 6-12

PUK Code 1-19, 9-4

R

Receive a call 3-4

Record 3-5

Reject incoming calls 3-8

Edit black list 3-21

Payphone 3-9

Set reject number 3-9

Side key 12-14

Unavailable 3-9

Unknown 3-9

Withheld 3-9

Reset settings 9-7

Ringtone 1-16

Ringtone reducer 12-20

S

S! Addressbook Back-up 11-9

Sync log 11-12

Sync mode 11-9

Saved pictures 5-7

Delete 5-16

Rename 5-16

Save 5-7

View 5-8

Secondary clock 12-13

Secret data folder 9-6

Secret mode 9-5

Security Code 1-2, 1-18

Select function from Main Menu 2-3

Select function with Switch Bar 2-3

Send DTMF 3-21

Set default memory 12-22

Shortcuts Key 2-4

Show my number 3-14, 3-19

Simple search 2-18, 12-14

Slide show 10-10

Softkey ii

Software update 13-5

Sounds & Alerts 2-5, 12-10, 12-11

Speaker phone call 3-20

Speed dial 3-6

SSL/TLS 5-2

Stopwatch 8-9

Symbols 13-9

System sounds 1-16

T

Tasks 8-7, 8-15

Delete 8-16

Text entry 2-7

Copy 2-19

Cut 2-19

Delete	2-12
Edit	2-12
Emoticon	2-10
Entry Mode	2-8
Line Break	2-10
Paste	2-19
Pictograms	2-10
Quick Address List	2-11
Symbol	2-10
Undo	2-20
Time zone	12-13

U

USB connection	11-7
User's Dictionary	2-12
Add	2-12
Delete	2-20
USIM Card	1-5
Insert/remove	1-6
USIM Lock	9-4
USIM Password	1-19, 9-4

V

vFile	10-2, 10-12
Vibration	1-16, 2-6, 8-14
View Account details	1-12
Voice Call	3-4
Adjust ringer volume	3-4
Adjust volume	3-5
Mute	3-20
Put a call on hold	3-5

Speaker phone call	3-20
Whisper	3-20
Voice mail service	3-14
Voice recorder	8-8
Play sound files	8-9
Protect/Unprotect sound files	8-17
Record settings	8-17
Record sound	8-8
Send sound files	8-17
Volume	1-16

W

Window

Calendar	8-3
Movie Window	7-6
Music Window	7-4
Phonebook	2-15
Standby Window	1-13
Still image viewer	6-3
Text Entry Window	2-8
Video Viewfinder	6-9
Voice recorder	8-8
World Clock	8-7

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Copy text	5-8
Details	5-9
Enter URL	5-3
Font size	12-12
Manufacture number	12-6

Refresh	5-8
Root certificates	12-6
Script	12-6
Search	5-8
Send URL	5-8

Number

3G/GSM	3-12, 12-17
---------------	--------------------

Objective Index

Adjust volume

Hearing volume	3-5, 12-20
Media Player	12-8
Ringtone volume	3-4

Backup

Memory Card	11-7
Phonebook	11-9

Cancel/Unlock

Answering Machine	3-7
Bluetooth®	11-4
Call barring	3-18
Caller ID	3-19
Call forwarding	3-16
Call waiting	3-16
Manner mode	1-14
Message Lock	4-14
Offline mode	1-14
Phone Lock	9-3
PIN Lock	9-4
Secret mode	9-5
Voicemail	3-15

Change

Mail address	4-4
Mode	1-15
Network Password	3-19
Phone Password	9-3
PIN	9-3
PIN2	9-3

Copy

File/Folder	10-6
-------------	------

Items	1-20, 2-23
Message content	4-24
Phonebook	2-22
Text	2-19
Text in page	5-8, 5-10

Delete/Clear

Call log	3-10
File/Folder	10-6
Memory	9-7
Messages	4-15, 4-24, 4-27
Notepad	8-15
Phonebook	2-18
Records (Answering Machine)	3-8
Schedule	8-12
Tasks	8-16
Text	2-12
User's Dictionary	12-14

Edit

Account details	1-12
Phonebook	2-23
Schedule	8-12
Tasks	8-15
Text	2-12

Initialize

Browser	5-10, 5-12
Memory Card	10-8

Insert/Remove

Battery	1-8
Memory Card	10-8
USIM Card	1-6

Make a call

Emergency call	3-7
International calls	3-11

Voice call	3-4
------------	-----

Play

Media Player	7-4, 7-5
Records (Answering Machine)	3-8
Sound	5-9, 5-12
Voice recorder	8-9

Protect/Lock

File	10-12
Functional Lock	9-5
Message	4-14

Receive

Bluetooth®	11-5
Message	4-10, 4-27

Reset

Account details	1-19
All Reset	9-7
Call time & cost	3-11
Reset settings	9-7

Save

Mail address	4-4
Message	4-19, 4-27
Phonebook	2-13, 2-15
User's Dictionary	2-12

Search

Bluetooth®-compatible device	11-4
Phonebook	2-17

Send

Bluetooth®	11-5
File	10-10
Message	4-4, 4-7
Notepad	8-15
Tasks	8-16

URL	5-8, 5-11
Set/Activate	
Alarm	8-4
Answering Machine	3-7
Any key answer	12-14
Black list	3-8, 12-19
Bluetooth®	11-4
Call barring	3-18
Caller ID	3-19
Call forwarding	3-16
Call waiting	3-16
Camera & Video	12-9, 12-10
Date & Time	12-13
File	10-12
International Code	12-17
Key Lock	1-13
Manner mode	1-14
Media Player	12-8
Missed call notification	3-15
Mode	1-14
Offline mode	1-14
Operator	3-12
Phone Lock	9-3
Phone sounds	12-11
Secret mode	9-5
Side key	12-14
Simple search	12-14
Sounds & Vibration	2-5
Vibration	2-6
Voicemail	3-15
View	
Answering Machine	3-8
Calendar	8-3

Call log	3-10
Call time & cost	3-11
Captured Pictures	6-8
Cost after call	12-18
Data Folder	10-3
Data in Memory Card	10-9
Memory Status	4-28, 10-9
Message	4-9, 4-10, 4-23, 4-27
Owner Number (Account Detail)	1-12
Recorded Video	6-11
Schedule	8-4
Tasks	8-7

Advanced Settings Index

Account Details	1-19	Standby Screen	2-19
Alarm	8-13	Tasks	8-15
Bluetooth® Settings	11-11	Text Entry	2-19
Bookmarks	5-14	User's Dictionary	2-20
Calendar	8-11	Using/Managing Messages	4-23
Call	3-20	Video Playback	7-10
Call Logs	3-21	Viewing Files	10-10
Capturing Still Images	6-12	Voice Recorder	8-17
Conference Call	3-22	World Clock	8-14
Currency/Unit Conversion	8-14	Yahoo! Keitai	5-8
File Viewer	8-17		
Folder Management	4-28		
Main Menu	2-19		
Managing Files/Folders	10-10		
Memory Status	10-13		
Music Playback	7-8		
Notepad	8-15		
Page Operations	5-13		
PC Site Browser	5-10		
Phonebook	2-20		
Playlist	7-12		
Received Messages	4-23		
Recording Videos	6-14		
S! Addressbook Back-up	11-12		
Saved pages	5-16		
Sending S! Mail	4-17		
Sending SMS	4-21		

Warranty & Service

Warranty

8305C purchase includes Warranty.

- Confirm shop name and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting handset for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" (☎P.13-2) for a solution. If a problem persists, contact Customer Service (☎P.13-22) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- Handset files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damage resulting from accidental loss or alteration of handset files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.
- Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank Mobile will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 for General Information, or
113 for Customer Assistance, toll free

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491
(Please take care to dial correctly. International charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

SoftBank 830SC User Guide

September 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For more information, please visit your
nearest SoftBank Shop.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.

<http://jp.samsungmobile.com>

Model Name: SoftBank 830SC

Manufacturer: Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.
